

*A Walk T*  
Grammar made Easy,

CONTAINING

Despauter's Grammar Reform'd,

AND

Rendred Plain and Obvious to the Capacity of YOUTH.

Together with

A NEW METHOD

OF

Teaching LATIN,

BY

Ten ENGLISH PARTICLES.

To which is added.

*A Critical Syntax.*

---

*Nullum munus Reipublicæ afferre majus meliusve possumus, quam si doceamus atque erudiamus juventutem. CICERO.*

---

The Fifth Edition, carefully corrected.

---



---

EDINBURGH,

Printed for JOHN PATON and MRS. BROWN, and Sold at their Shops in the Parliament Close. MDCCXLII.

Price Bound, One Shilling Sterling.

At Edinburgh, the Nineteenth Day of April, 1708.

**A**NENT the Petition given in and presented to the Lords of her Majesty's Privy Council, by *Thomas Watt* Master of Arts, shewing, That where the Petitioner, after a great Deal of Study for the Improvement of Learning, has compiled a Book entituled, *Grammar made Easy, containing Despauter's Grammar reform'd, and rendred plain and obvious to the Capacity of Youth, &c.* which Book is already Printed, and taught with Abundance of Success in this Place; but the Petitioner may in a great Measure lose the due Encouragement he expects by the said Undertaking, if other Persons be allowed to Re-print and Sell the foresaid Book composed by him as said is. And seeing their Lordships are always in use to encourage Undertakings of this Sort, especially where the samen tends to the Propagation of Learning: And therefore craving to the Effect aftermentioned, as the said Petition bears. The Lords of her Majesty's Privy Council having considered the above Petition given in to them by *Thomas Watt* Master of Arts, and the samen being read in their Presence, the said Lords do hereby grant to the Petitioner, the sole Power and Privilege of Printing the Book above mentioned; and discharge all others within *Scotland* to Re-print the samen, or to Import re-printed Copies from any Place without the Kingdom of *Great Britain* without the Petitioner or his Assignees Warrant, and that for the Space of Nineteen Years, under the Penalty of Twenty Pound Sterling, to be paid by the Contraveeners, to the Petitioner or Assignees, besides Confiscation of the Books so Re-printed and Imported.

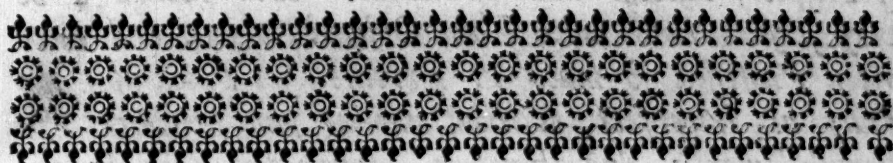


*Extractum per me.*

*Robert Forbes, Cls. Sti. Conc.*

The sole Privilege of Printing the above Book, is now, by Right from the deceast Mr. *Watt*, in the Persons of *John Paton* and Mrs. *Brown* Booksellers in *Edinburgh*, and secured to them by Act of Parliament, *Anne 8. Chap. 19.*





To the Reverend and Learned,

Mr. *William Carstairs*, Principal,

Mr *George Meldrum*, Professor of Di-  
vinity,

Mr. *William Law*,

Mr. *William Scot*,

Mr *Charles Areskine*,

Mr. *Robert Stewart*,

} Professors of  
Philosophy,

Mr. *Laurence Dundas*, Professor of  
Humanity,

In the College of *Edinburgh*.

GENTLEMEN,

**Y**E have here such a Present as the Poor Man makes  
to his Rich and Great Neighbour, by whom the  
Basket of Flowers or Fruit is not ill taken; tho' he  
has more Plenty of his own Growth, and in much greater  
Perfection. I confess the Present is small; but worthless  
Things receive a Value, when they are made the Offerings

( )  
of Respect, Esteem and Gratitude. And though I be  
very sensible how much I am Obliged to you, and have  
often Professed so much in Private, yet I look upon the  
Duty as Imperfect, without making some Publick Ac-  
knowledgment: And therefore, though the Book be not  
worthy of your Patronage; yet I think it Safer to run  
the Hazard of being judged Unlearned, than counted Un-  
grateful.

Gentlemen, I forbear to Represent you to your selves  
or the World; your Learning and Virtue are too Con-  
spicuous to need the Panegyrick of so mean a Pen: There-  
fore I shall only intreat your Goodness to Pardon the  
Boldness of this Address, and suffer me to shelter the  
Essay under the Patronage of your Names: That so I  
may have the Opportunity to let the World know how  
much I think my self Honoured by the Character of,

G E N T L E M E N.

Your most Humble,

most Obedient,

and Devoted

Servant,

Thomas Watt.



## The Preface to the Reader.

SEEING *Greek* and *Hebrew* Grammars are compiled in a known Language for the Use of Universities, I think the same Condescension, as to a *Latin* Grammar, cannot in Reason be denied unto Children in *Latin* Schools; for how highly unreasonable is it, that the Principles of an unknown Language should be taught in an unknown Tongue, and that the Learner should be supposed to understand what he is but going to Learn? But though I don't admire the Way of Teaching the *Latin* Tongue by Rules, much less by Rules in an unknown Tongue; yet, (lest too great an Innovation should mar the Design) I have taken *Despauter's* Rules for a Foundation, and endeavoured to keep as near them as might be, unless where Obscurity, Superfluity or Deficiency required an Alteration. I have added to each Rule a short *English* Explication, instead of a Tedious and Obscure *Latin* one. Many obsolete Words (as *Zeugma*, *Reate*, *Cere*, *Nepet*, *Ispal*, *Frit*, *Git*, &c.) are wholly omitted; others which seldom occur in *Classick* Authors (as *Praneste*, *Sulmo*, *Tibur*, &c.) are omitted in the Rule, but marked in the Explication. The *Irregular Nouns* (being, according to *Despauter's* Method, but a Rhapsody of Confusion, and scarce intelligible to Mortals) are here rendered plain, and obvious to the meanest Capacity. The Conjugations of Verbs are reduced to an exact Alphabetical Order. I have added to the *Etymology*, some Directions concerning Points and Notes, necessary for directing the Voice, and shewing the Proportion of Sentences, in respect of their Dependence or Government in Construction. All the Figures belonging to Sentences are reduced to *Ellipsis*, and placed at the End of the Syntax: Where I have  
like;



likewise added a short Treatise concerning the Artificial or Elegant Way of placing Words in a Sentence: Together with some Directions for Exposition. The *Examples* of Etymology are placed at the End of the Grammar, and Translated into *English*, in the same Order in which they occur in each Rule. Thus I have endeavoured to reform *Despauter's* Grammar, and to put it in a more Modish Dress, for the Satisfaction of those, who ( being regardless of the Wisdom and Industry of latter Ages ) content themselves with the Rubbish of Antiquity.

NOW, for a Specimen of what Improvement might be made in the Art of Teaching, ( if Men of suitable Judgment and Ability were employed about it ) I offer the following Essay, (entituled, *The new Method*) not desiring to impose it upon any, but propose it to all, with the humblest Submission to greater Experience, and better Judgments. In this new Attempt I have endeavoured to give a plain Model of Syntax founded upon *English* Particles, as far more adapted to the Capacity of Youth, and Intelligible to young Learners, than Metaphysical Notions and Definitions used in other Grammars. In the *Critical Syntax* a particular Regard has been had to *Sanctius*, *Scioppius*, *Vossius*, and other Philosophical Projectors, whose Critical Sentiments are here explained, and digested into Six Rules, whereby the Learner may be enabled to discover the Mistakes, and resolve the Difficulties which usually occur in the Government of Words.

NOW I propose this new Method, as a probable Help to those who think themselves not better provided; leaving the Reasonableness of my Sentiments to be their Defence; and my Reader free in the mean Time, if my Sense satisfy him not, to use his own Disquisition and Judgment.



ETYMO-

# ETYMOLOGY.

## RULES to know the GENDER by the SIGNIFICATION.

**O**MNE Marem signans nomen decet esse Virile.

Names of Gods, of Angels, of Men, of Mens Offices, the Animals, are masculine.

Hic { *Jupiter,* } { *Gabriel,* } { *Carolus,* } { *Rex,* } { *Equus,* }  
       { *Mars,* } { *Lucifer,* } { *Jacobus,* } { *Scriba,* } { *Leo.* }

Tu quæ Fœmellam signant Muliebria ponas.

Names of Goddesses, of Women, of Womens Offices, the Animals, are Feminine.

Hæc { *Juno,* } { *Catharina,* } { *Regina,* } { *Equa,* }  
       { *Pallas,* } { *Maria,* } { *Soror,* } { *Leona,* }

Commune est nomen sexum quod signat utrumque.

Nouns signifying both Sexes, when used for Males, are Masculine; when for Females, Feminine; as hic *Patres* pro *Patre*, hæc *Patres* pro *Matre*. Also hic & hæc *Civis*, *Canis*, *Comes*, &c.

*Exc.* *Mascula glis, vermis, phoenix cum vulture, turtur, Mus, lepus ac elephas, piscis, bombyxque, Salarque.*

Nouns signifying both Sexes, under one Article, are called Epicene, as *Passer*, *Aquila*. The Sex is distinguished by adding *Mas*, or *Fœmina*; as *Mas passer*, *Fœmina passer*.

If the Signification only be regarded, without taking Notice of the Sex, their Adjectives are Masculine, as *Corvus niger*; and often Feminine, if that agree with the Termination, as *Aquila fulva*.

*Um* semper neutrum: Sic invariabile nomen.

All Nouns in *um*, and all Nouns undeclined, are of the Neuter Gender. Nouns in *um*, as hoc *Mancipium*, *Scortum*, *Templum*. Nouns undeclined, as, 1. Hoc *nil*, *nihil*, *fas*, *nefas*, *manna*, *mammona*, *hir*, *pondo*. 2. Names of Letters, as *Magnum A*, *Nigrum T*, but hæc *A*, when the Word *litera* is understood. 3. All Nouns in *I*, as hoc *gummi*. 4. Verbs and Adverbs taken for Nouns; as *Scire tuum*, *Velle suum*, *Cras aliud*. 5. Any Word put for its self, without taking Notice of its Signification; as, *Lux est monosyllabum*. *Anno est Verbum*.

Masculinum fluvii nomen, ventique requirit.

Names of Rivers and Winds are Masculine; as, hic *Garumna*, *Tibris*, *Boreas*, *Aquilo*, *Eurus*.

Insula,

Insula, & Urbs, Arbor, Regio, muliebria sunt.

Names of Islands, Towns, Trees, and Countries, are Feminine;

Hæc { *Britannia,* } { *Corinthus,* } { *Malus,* } { *Ægyptus,*  
           { *Cyprus,* } { *Lutetia,* } { *Pyrus,* } { *Scotia,*

The Genders of these following are known by their Terminations: hoc *Preneſt-e*, hic *Sulm-o*, hoc *Tib-ur*, hoc *Londin-um*; yet we can say hæc *Londinum*, if *Urbs* be understood.

*Robur, Acer, Suberque, Siler, Thus*, neutra requirunt.

These Names of Trees, *Robur, Acer*, &c. are Neuter. And *Oleaster, Spinus, Libanus, Rubus, Cupressus*, are sometimes Masculine by their Termination, though more commonly Feminine, according to the General Rule.

Vox quandoque suo genus accipit a generali.

Many Substantives take their Genders from their own general Nouns; as *Oſſa*, which is Masculine; because its general Word *Mons* is of the Masculine. Likewise hic *Hadria*, quia est hic *Sinus*. Hic *Adamus*, quia est hic *Lapis*. Hic *Agragas*, quia est hic *Mons*. Hæc *Eunuchus*, quia est hæc *Comædia*.

*Græca* suum semper genus immutabile servant.

*Greek Nouns* have the same Gender in *Latin*, which they had in *Greek*, as hic *Comer-a*, *Planet-a* vel *es*. Hic *Magnes, Lebes*. Hæc *Tyrannis*. Hæc *Arb-os* vel *or*. Hic *Lab-os* vel *or*. Hæc *Diphthong-os* vel *us*. Hæc *Synod-os* vel *us*.

## RULES to know the GENDER by the TERMINATION.

Hæc dat *a* quod primæ; quod ternæ est dicito neutrum.

If a Noun ending in *a* be of the first Declension, it is Feminine, as hæc *penn-a, -æ*. If it be of the third, it is Neuter, as hoc *Them-a, -tis*.

Hæc petit *E* primæ: Neutrum deposcit *E* Ternæ.

If a Noun ending in *e* be of the first Declension, it is Feminine, as hæc *Grammatic-e, -es*. If it be of the third, it is Neuter, as hoc *Sedit-e, -is*.

1 O sit masculineum: 2 verbale *io* cum *caro* vult hæc.

3 Jungito Fœmineis *do, go*: 4 tamen *harpago, Tendo, Ordo, ligo, cardo, margo*, bene mascula, sunt.

1 Nouns ending in *o* are Masculine, as hic *Sermo*. 2 Nouns in *io* that are derived from Verbs, are Feminine; as hæc *Dictio, Lectio, Positio*. Likewise hæc *Caro*. 3 Nouns ending in *do, and go*, are Feminine, as hæc *Formido, Imago*. 4 But *Harpago, Tendo, &c.* are Masculine.

1 *U, c, d, da* neutris; simul *l, t*, neutra requirunt.

2 Masculina sunt *Sal, Sol*; & *Sal*, hoc raro tenebit.

1 Nouns ending in *U, C, D, L, T*, are Neuter; as hoc *Genu, Lac, Quid, Mel, Caput*. 2 *Sal, and Sol*, are Masculine; and sometimes *Sal* is Neuter.

1 N petit



- 1 N petit hic : 2 Generi finita in *men* dato neutro ;  
 3 Cuncta Secundæ etiam, cum *Gluten*, & *Inguen*, & *Unguen* :  
 Fœmineo *Sindon*, *Icon* variare jubemus.

1 Nouns ending in *n* are Masculine ; as, hic *Pæan*, *Delphin*, *Canon* ;  
 2 But Nouns ending in *men* are Neuter ; as hoc *Carmen*, *Plumen*.  
 3 Nouns of the second Declension that end in *on* are also Neuter ; as,  
 hoc *Gymnasion* *Gymnasia*.

*Ar* petit hoc, velut *ur* : Sed *Furfur* flecte virile.

Nouns ending in *ar*, and *ur*, are Neuter ; as hoc *Calcar*, *Guttur* ;  
 but hic *Furfur*.

1 *Er* petit hic : 2 *Terræ* hoc fœtus [*Cucumer* nisi] poscit.  
*Uber*, *Iter*, *Verber*, quibus addes rite *Cadaver*,  
*Ver*, *Spinter*, *Tuber*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *Linter*.

1 Nouns ending in *er*, are Masculine : as, hic *Liber*. 2 The Fruit or  
 Seeds of the Earth are Neuter, as hoc *Papaver*, *Piper*, *Zinziber* ; but  
*Cucumer* is Masculine, hoc *Uber*, *Iter*, &c.

Hic dat *or* : Hæc *Arbor* : Neutrum *Cor*, *Marmor*, & *Æquor*.

Nouns ending in *or* are Masculine, as hic *Timor*, &c.

1 *As* Primæ vult hic ; *As* Ternæ fœmineum vult.

2 *Vas vasis* neutrum est : *As assis* hic dabit apte.

1 If a Noun ending in *as* be of the first Declension, it is Masculine,  
 as hic *Tiar as-a*. If it be of the third, it is Feminine, as hæc *Pietas, tis* :  
 2 hoc *vas vasis* ; hic aut hæc *vas vadis*.

1 *Es* sit fœmineum : 2 *Tudes* hic vult, *Poples*, & *Ames*,  
*Pes*, *Paries*, *Merges*, *Palmes* cum *Limite*, *Stipes*,  
 Et *Fomes*, *Trames*, *Termes*, cum *Gurgite* *Cespes*,  
 3 Hic plerumque *Dies*, 4 semper dabit hic tibi proles.  
 Postulat *Hippomanes* neutrum, velut *Æs*, *Cacoethes*.

Nouns ending in *es* are Feminine, as hæc *Nubes*, *Sedes*. 2 *Tudes*,  
*Poples*, &c. are Masculine. 3 *Dies* is Masculine or Feminine singular ;  
 and only Masculine plural : 4 as hic *Meridies*,

1 *Is* dabit hæc, ut *Vis* : Sunt mascula *Pollis* & *Axis*,  
 Quois addes *Callis*, *Sotularis*, *Acinacis*, *Orbis*,  
 Et *Cenchrus*, *Vectis*, *Postis* cum *Sanguine*, *Fascis*,  
 Et *Fustis*, *Mensis*, *Collis*, *Caulis*, quoque *Follis*,  
 Et 2 *Cassis*, *Torris*, *Lapis*, *Unguis*, *Aqualis*, & *Ensis*,  
 Sic *Cucumis*, *Vomisque*, *Assis*, 3 compositaque ab *Asse*.  
 In *nis* finitum cœu *Panis*, pone virile.

Hic aut hæc *Finis*, *Clunis*, cum *Corbe*, *Canalis*,  
 Addere quois liceat *Torquis*, *Pulvis*, *Cinis*, *Amnis*.

1 Nouns ending in *is* are Feminine, as hæc *Vis* : 2 *Cassis* *Cassis* is  
 Masculine ; but *Cassis cassidis* Feminine : 3 as hic *Octassis*, *Decussis*.

1 Masculinum dabit *os*. *Cos*, *dos*, muliebria & *Arbos* :  
 Hoc *Epos*, & *Chaos*, & *Melos*, ac 2 *Os oris* & *offis*.

1 Nouns ending in *os* are Masculine, as *hic Flos, Mos*, 2 *hoc Os oris*, and *Os ossis*.

1 *Us* dato masculeo, si quartæ est sive secundæ.

*Hæc dant Vannus, Humus*, dant *hæc Domus, Alvus* 2 *Acusq* ; *Porticus* atque *Tribus, Colus & Manus*, addito 3 *Ficus*.

*Hic aut hæc Grossus, Specus & Penus*, adde *Phaselus*.

*Hic aut hoc Vulgus*, verum *hoc Virus, Pelagusque*.

1 Nouns in *us* of the second or fourth Declension are Masculine, as *hic Ventus Venti*, *hic Fructus Fructus* : 2, 3. See the Examples at the End of the Grammar.

1 Postulat *us* neutrum, quoties id Tertia flebit.

Dat *Pecus* 2 *hæc pecudis, subscusque, palusque, senectus, Lausque, salus, virtus, fraus, servitus*, atque *juventus*, *Ac incus, tellus* ; 3 *quæ pus* dat mascula dicas.

1 Nouns in *us* of the third Declension are Neuter ; as *hoc Tempus, Corpus*. Gen. *oris* ; 2 *Hæc Pecus Pecudis*, *hoc Pecus Pecoris* ; 3 as *hic Tripus*, &c.

1 *S* sit fœminei generis, si consona præsit.

Mascula sunt *pons, fons, torrens, mons, densque chalybsque*

2 Mascula sunt etiam quæ derivantur ab *asse* ;

3 Et polysyllaba in *s* dum *p* præponitur illi.

*Hic aut hæc donant* 4 *frons, scrobs*, 5 *stirps-truncus adepsque*.

Nouns in *s* with a Consonant going immediately before *s*, are Feminine, as *hæc Trabs, puls, pars* ; 2 as *hic Quadrans, Sextans* ; 3 Nouns ending in *ps* of more Syllables than one, are Masculine, as *hic Hydrops* ; 4, 5 See the Examples.

1 *Hæc petit x*. 2 Polysyllaba in *ax* & in *ex* maribus do.

*Hæc Fornax, similax, forfex, carexque, supellex*.

Mascula sunt *Fornix, varix, mastixque, calixque*,

*Grex & Eryx, sandix, spadix*, 3 quodque *Uncia* præbet.

*Hic aut hæc cortex & Onyx*, cum 4 *prole* ; *silexque*,

*Imbrex, calx, ramex, pumex* jungantur *obexque*.

1 Nouns ending in *x* are Feminine, as *hæc pax, lex, vox* : 2 But Nouns in *ax* and *ex*, of more than one Syllable, are Masculine, as *hic Thorax, pollex* : 3 As *hic septunx, deunx* : 4 *Sardonix*.

1, *Æ A, tantum pluralia*.

Plurale *A* neutrum est, *I* mas, muliebria sunt *Æ*.

Nouns only plural in *A*, are Neuter, as *hæc Arma, orum* :

In *I*, Masculine, as *hi cancelli, orum* :

In *Æ* Feminine, as *hæc Nugæ, arum*

### De Generibus Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva trium generum sunt omnia. Quædam

Unam, sive duas ; teneant tres plurima fines.

All Adjectives have three Genders ; and some have but one Termination, as, *hic, hæc, hoc, Felix* : Others two, as *hic & hæc Fortis*, & *hoc Forte* : And many have three, as *hic Bonus, hæc Bona, hoc Bonum*.

Note. Some Adjectives are undeclined, as *hic, hæc, hoc Frugi*.

General

# General RULES of DECLENSIONS.

In Neutris, primus, quartus, quintus similes sunt :  
Tres idem casus plurales a retinebunt.

In Words of the Neuter Gender, the Nom. Acc. and Voc. end alike ; as *pomum* : And the same three Cases in the Plural end in a as *poma*.

- 1 Est quintus recto similis : 2 *f* tollito Græcis.
- 3 Cum proprium dat *ius*, dempta *us*, fit in *i* tibi quintus :
- 4 *Filius* addatur. *Deus* O *Deus* ; & *Meus* O *Mi*.
- 5 *Us* per *e* mutabunt bene cætera cuncta secundæ.
- 6 Interdum excipias *Fluvius*, *populus*, *chorus*, *agnus*.

1 The Voc. is like the Nom. in each Declension, as *Pecunia*, *Liber*.  
2 Greek Nouns in *s* form the Voc. by taking away *s* from the Nom. as *Thomas*, Voc. *Thoma* ; *Theseus*, Voc. *Theseu* ; *Pallas*, Voc. *Palla*. 3 Proper Names in *ius* (by taking away *us*) form the Voc. in *i* ; as *Virgilius*, Voc. *Virgili*. 4 *Filius* maketh *Fili*. 5 All other Nouns in the second Declension change *us* into *e* ; as *Ventus*, Voc. *Vente*. 6 But *Fluvius* hath *Fluvius* or *Fluvie*, &c.

Pluralem sextum similem formato Dativo.

In each Declension the Abl. Plur. is like the Dative, as *pennis*, *ventis*.

## The First DECLENSION.

E, vel A, prima dabit, simul AS, ES, Flexio fines.

The first Declension hath Four Terminations; one Latin, viz. a, as *Penna* ; and three Greek, viz. *as*, *es*, *e*, as *Thomas*, *Anchises*, *Pentecoste*.

- 1 *Æ* genitivus habet, cui casum junge dativum.
- Si tamen 2 *e* recto fuerit, genitivus in *es* fit.
- 3 *Ai* dant patrio, simul *as*, quandoque vetusti.

1 As Gen. & Dat. *Pennæ* ; 2 as *Circe*, Gen. *Circēs* ; 3 the Ancients used the Gen. in *as*, as *Familia Familas* : And sometimes in *ai*, as *Aula* Gen. *Aulai*.

- 1 *Am* faciet quartus : 2 sed & *an*, si rectus in *as* fit.
- 3 *E* finita, vel *es*, quarto *en* solummodo poscunt.

1 As *Pennam*. 2 Nouns in *as*, have likewise *an*, as *Thomas*, Acc. *Thomam* or *Thoman*. 3 But *es* and *e* have only *en*, as *Anchises*, Acc. *Anchisen*. *Circe*, Acc. *Circen*.

- 1 *A* sextus donat, 2 tamen *es* ac *e* retinent *e*.

1 As *Penna*. 2 as *Anchises*, Abl. *Anchise*, *Circe* Abl. *Circe*.

- 1 Primus pluralis fit in *a*. 2 Genitivus in *arum*.

1 As *Pennæ*. 2 As *Pennarum*.

- 1 Tertius *is* poscit : 2 tamen *abus* pauca requirunt, *Filia*, *Mula*, *Dua*, *Liberta*, *Equa*, *Nata*, *Dea*, *Ambe*.



1 As *Pennis*. 2 *Filia*, *Mula*, &c. have the Dat. and Abl. plur. in *abus*, to distinguish them from the Dat. and Abl. plur. of their Masculines, *Filius*, *Mulus*, &c.

Accusativus pluralis semper in *as* fit.

As *Pennas*.

## The Second DECLENSION.

*ER*, vel *IR*, *UR*, fines *US*, & *UM*, dedit altera recto ;  
*EUS*, *OS*, *ON*, e Græcis : *os* & *on*, per *us*, *um* varianda.

The second Declension hath eight Terminations ; five *Latin*, *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um* ; and three *Greek*, *eus*, *os*, *on*. The *Latin* change *os*, *on*, into *us*, *um* ; as *Synodos*, vel *Synodus*. *Ilion*, vel *Ilium*.

*I* patrius servat, recto parisyllabus ipsi.

The Genitive endeth in *i*, and is equal to the Nominative in Syllables, as *Ventus*, *Venti* : *Liber*, *Libri*.

1 Crescit *ir*, *ur*, *Gener*, & *Prosper*, *Puer*, *Asper*, *Adulter*, *Presbyter*, atque *Tener*, *Miser*, *Exter*, *Gibber*, *Iberque* ;  
Et *Lacer*, atque *Socer*, *Liger* ; orta 2 *Gero*, *Fero*. 3. *Liber*  
*Mobile*, vel *Bacchus* : queis *Dexter* jungere possis.

Nouns in *ir*, and *ur*, have more Syllables in the Gen. than Nom. as *vir*, *viri*, *Satur*, *Saturi*, and likewise, *Gener*, *Generi*, &c. 2 as *Laniger* *Lanigeri*, *Furcifer* *Furciferi*. 3 *Liber* a Book Gen. *Libri* ; but *Liber*, a *um*, free, or signifying *Bacchus*, Gen. *Liberi* : Also *Deater* *Dexteri* ; and being contracted, *Dextri*.

*Unus*, *Uter*, *Neuter*, cum *Solus*, & *Ullus*, & *Alter*,  
Atque *Alius*, *Totus*, flectes Pronomen ut *Ille*.

*Unus*, *Uter*, &c. make their Gen. Case *ius*, and their Dat. in *i*. like *Ille*, as *unus*, a *um*, Gen. *Unius*, Dat. *Uni*, &c. But *Alius*, *ille* and *Is* form the Neuter Gender in *ud* ; in all other Cases they are like *Bonus*. And some of these may likewise be declined according to the general Rule as *Nullus*, Gen. *nulli*, as *Nulli consilii sum*. Terent. We say also *Neutri generis* rather than *Neutrius*.

*Os*, si fit recto, semper dabit *o* genitivo.

Greek Nouns in *os* have *o* in the Gen. as *Androgeos*, Gen. *Androgeo*.  
*Tertius*, & *Sextus*, formantur in *o* tibi casus.

As *Libro*.

1 *Um* poscit quartus ; 2 quandoque per *on* loco Græca.

1 As *Librum*. 2 as *Synodus* vel *Synodos* ; hence in the Accusative, *synodum* vel *synodon*.

1 *Primus* pluralis fit in *i* : 2 Genitivus in *orum*.

5 Græcus fiet in *on* : 4 *is* tertius : 5 *as* dato quarto.

As *Libri*. 2 *Librorum*. 3 *hi Cimmerii Cimmeriorum*, vel *on*. 4 As *Libris*.  
5 As *Libros*.

Names

Names of Feasts may have *orum* and *is* in the second Declension ; or *um* and *ibus* in the third ; as *Saturnalia*, Gen. *orum*, Dat. *is* ; or *Saturnalia*, Gen. *um*, Dat. *ibus* : Also *Vulcanalia*.

*Ambo* and *duo* are only plural, and are thus declined, Nom. & Voc. *o, a*, Gen. *orum*, *arum, orum*, Dat. & Abl. *obus, abus, obus*, Acc. *o* vel *os*, as, *o*. *Deus* in the Nom. plur. makes *Dii*, and the Dat. and Abl. *Diiis*.

### Annot. de Gracis.

1 Nouns in *eus*. (when *eus* is but one Syllable) are of the third Declension ; as Nom. *Orph-eus*, Gen. *Or-phe os*, Dat. *Or-phe-i*, Acc. *Or-phe-a*, without the Abl. Also *Tydeus*, Gen. *Ty-de-os*, &c.

2 When the *Latins* change *eus* into *e-us* of two Syllables, such Nouns are declined like *ventus* ; as *Orphe-us*, Gen. *Orphe-i*, or *e-i* being contracted into *ei* makes *Or-phei* : Also *Ty-de-us*, &c.

3 These in *os* are declined thus. Nom. *Androgeos*, Gen. Dat. & Abl. *o*, Acc. *on*, Voc. *os*, like the Nom, or by taking away *s*, makes *o*, when *OS* is changed into *US*, decline them like *Ventus* ; as *Synodos* vel *us*, Gen. *Synodi*, &c.

## The Third DECLENSION.

Tertia dat varios fines, dans *is* genitivo.

Græcorum patrius vel in *os*, vel in *is*, vel in *us* fit.

Nouns of the third Declension end in *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, u*. The Genitive of *Latin* Nouns ends always in *is* : But the *Greek* Genitive endeth in *os*, as *Paris Paridos* ; or in *is*, as *Paris Paridis* ; or in *us*, as *Dido Didus*.

1 Semper *a* mittit *atis*. 2 Vertes *e* per *is* Genitivo.

1 As *Thema thematis*. 2 As *Sedile seditis*.

1 Addito *nis* post *o* ; 2 dat *inis* muliebri *do*, goque :

3 *Virgo, Ordo, Margo, cum Cardine, Apollo, Cupido, Turbo, Homo, ceu Nemo* : tamen *Unedo* postulat *onis*.

*Enis* habent *Anio, Nerio* : *Caro* dat tibi *carnis*.

4 Cuncta per *o* patrio dant *us* muliebria Græca,

1 As *Sermo sermo-nis* ; But Feminines in *do* and *go* have *inis* ; as *Formido formidinis* ; *caliginis* 3 also *Virgo-inis*, &c. 4 Greek Feminines in *o* have *us* in the Gen. and in all other Cases *o* ; as Nom. *Dido*, Gen. *Didus*, Dat. *o*, Acc. *o*, Voc. *o*, Abl. *o*.

*Is* jungunt, *c, d, l* ; *Lac lactis* ; *lis dato, Mel, Fel*.

*Melchisedec Melchisedecis, Halec Halec-is, David David-is, Vestigal Vestigalis* :

1 Additur *is* post *n* ; 2 tamen *on* quandoque dat *ontis*.

3 Donat *inis* neutrum *Pecten, Flamen, cano* 4 *natum*.

1 As *Titan Titan-is*. 2 Some Greek Nouns in *on* have *ontis*, as *Demophon Demopho-ontis* ; and many follow the general Rule, as *Mammon Mammon-is Helicon Helicon-is* ; 3 As hoc *Carmen inis*, also hic *Pecten Pect-inis*, hoc *Flamen Flaminis* ; 4 *Tibicen tibi-icis, Tubicen Tubic-inis, a Tibia & Tuba ac Cano*.

1 *R capit is patrio* : *Far farris* postulat ; 2 *Hepar Hepatos* efficiet ; 3 *cris* mobile *cer* dat, ut *Acer*, *Ac Alacer* ; 5 *bris* dant *Imber* cum prole ; *Saluber*, *Et Celeber* ; 5 per *tris* *ter* formes omne Latinum ; *Et Pater & Mater* jungas : dat *eris Later* ; & *Côr Cordis* ; 6 *Iter itineris* : *Jovis* optat *Jupiter* usque. 7 *Robur, oris, Jecur, atque Femur, tibi præbet Eburque.*

1 As *Calcar-is* ; 2 *Hepar Hepatis* ; vel *Hepatos* ; 3 Adjectives in *cer* have *cris*, as *acer acris* ; 4 *Imber imbris* *September-bris* ; 5 Latin Nouns in *ter* have *tris*, as *Frater fratris* to which add *Pater patris, Mater matris* though they be Greek Words ; *Iter itineris* ; 7 *Robur roboris, Jecur, jecoris, &c.*

1 *As atis* format : *vult Mas maris* : *As dabit assis*, *Hoc Vas vasis* habet ; *Vas hic vadis* : 2 *antis* habere *Mascula Græca* volunt : per *adis* 3 non *mascula* pónas.

1 As *Pietas pietatis* ; 2 *Hic Adamas adamantis* ; also *Elephas, Gigas* ; 3 Nouns of the Feminine, or Common Gender have *adis* ; as *hæc Pallas, Palladis, hic aut hæc Arcas Arcadis.*

1 *Es mutabis in is* ; 2 dant *etis* plurima *græca.* *Adde Quies, Locuples* ; *curtum per etis Teges* exit, *Et Seges, Interpres, Præpes, Pariesque Abiesque, Indiges, atque Aries, Perpes, Teres, ac Hebes* addo.

1 As *Sedes sedis* ; 2 *Lebes lebetis, Tapes tapetis* ; also *Quies quietis, Locuples locupletis.*

1 *Cætera Masculei aut generis communis, ut Hospes, Dant itis in patrio* ; *facilis quæ glossa docebit.* *Sed Verres verris, Vates vatisque* requirunt. *Pesque pedis* ; 2 *natum sedeo* dat *idis* ; *volet edis Hares, ut Merces* ; *Cererisque Ceres* retinebit.

1 As *hic Poples poplitis* ; *hic aut hæc Hospes hospitis* ; 2 As *Præses præsidis.*

1 *Is non mutabo.* 2 *dat idis Cuspisque Lapisque, Et Cassis galeam signans, & plurima* 3 *Græca* : *Dant per* 4 *eos, per ios, per yos, per ydos, per & entos* ; *Ac* 7 *inos quædam.* 8 *Glis ssis, dis, ris, tis, habebit.*

1 As *Navis, Gen. navis* ; *hic & hæc Omnis, Gen. Omnis* ; 2 *Cuspis cuspidis, &c.* 3 Many Greek Nouns have *idis* or *idos*, as *Paris. Paridis* vel *Paridos* ; 4 Many have *eos* or *ios*, as *Hæresis hæreseos* or *hæresios* ; 5 Some in *y* have *yos*, as *Erynnys, Erynnys* ; 6 Some have *ydos* or *entos*, as *Chlamys, Chlamydos* ; *Symois, Symoentis* vel *entor* ; 7 Some which end in *is* or *in*, have *inos*, as *Delphis vel Delphin, Delphinis* vel *inos* ; 8 See the Examples.

1 *Is mutant in eris, Pulvis, Cucumisque Cinisque Et Vomis* : 2 *sed inis, Pollis Sanguisque, requirunt.*



*Dis, Lis, dant iis, cum Samnis, junge Quiritem.*  
*Sola Charis charitis : Semis semissis habebit.*

1 *Pulvis pulveris*, &c. with *e* before *ris* short: 2 *Pollis pollinis*, *Sanguis sanguinis* with *i* before *nis* short.

3 *Os otis* format: *Glos, Mos, Flos, Ros* facit *oris*.

*Arboris* ex *arbor*, & *Honos* tibi format *honoris*.

*Devorat Os oris*, quicquid lucratur *Os ossis*.

*Ros flectas bovis*; & *Custos custodis* habeto.

*Phos, Minos, Heros, & Tros*, formantur in *ois*.

1 *As Cos cotis*; 2 Nouns which end in *os* or *or*, form their Genitive from *or* and not *os*; *Arb-or* vel *or*, *arboris*; *Honos* vel *or*, *honoris*; also *Labor, Lepor, Odor, Vapor*, &c. 3 See the Examples.

4 *Us* breve mittit *oris*: 2 *Longat medius gradus oris*.

*Dant 3eris Hulus, Olus, Vellus, Venus, & Genus*, atque

*Viscus, Acus, Fœdus, Scelus*, & cum *Pondere, Vulnus,*

*Munus, Onus, Sidus, Latus* ac *Opus*, & *Vetus* adde;

*Infuper & Funus, Rudus, Glomus*, adjiciantur.

1 *As Corpus corporis*: 2 *Melius melioris*. 3 *Hulus hulceris*, &c. with *e* before *ris* short.

*Uris* habet *Tellus*; 1 *veluti Monosyllaba*: *Grus, Sus*

*Dant uis, Intercus* dat *utis*; *Liguris* *Ligus* optat.

*Dat Pecus hæc* 2 *Pecudis*. 3 *Loca græca feruntur in untis*.

4 *Ortum* a *Pus* dat *odis*. 5 *Subscus, Incus, Palus, udis*.

*Cætera, ceu Virtus*; muliebria dantur in *utis*.

1 *As Mus muris, Rus ruris*. 2 *Hæc Pecus pecudis*: hoc *Pecus, pecoris*. Greek Names of Places have *untis*, as *Opus Opuntis*. 4 *Tripus Tripodis*. 5 *Subscus subscudis*, &c. with *u* before *dis* long.

*Æs aris*; *Præs pradis* habet: *Laus Frausque* dat *audis*.

## Bs, Ps, Ms, Ls.

1 *I posito inter bs aut ps* formes genitivum.

2 *E per i* mutabunt polysyllaba: dat *cupis Auceps*,

*Optat Hyems hyemis, puls pultis* flectitur apte.

1 Nouns in *bs* or *ps* form their Genitive in *bis* and *pis*, by putting *i* between *b* and *s*, and *p* and *s*; as *Trabs arabis*, *Stips stipis*; 2 Nouns of more than one Syllable, which have *e* before *bs* and *ps*, change *e* into *i* in the Genitive; as *Calebs calibis*, *Municeps municipis*.

3 *Ns aut rs, s demens, tis* dabit apte.

*Dis* vult *Glans, Nefrens, capitis Lens*, & folium *Frons*,

*Et Libripens, Concors, Discors*, & 2 *cætera proles*.

4 *Untis* habento *Quiens* & *Iens*; sed ab *ambio entis*.

1 Nouns in *ns*, and *rs*, form their Genitive by taking away *s*, and adding *tis*; as *Mons montis*, *Ars artis*, 2 and the rest of the Compounds of *Cor*; as *Misericors*, *Vecors*. 3 *Quiens queuntis*, *Iens euntis*, *Abiens abeuntis*; But *Ambiens* from *Ambio* hath *ambientis*.

A Caput est capitis, cipitis semper dato i proli.

1 As Occiput occipitis, Sinciput sincipitis.

1 X in *cis* muto ; 2 per *gis* *Lex*, *Frux*, *Aquilex*, *Rex*, *Grex*, *Remex*, *flecto* ; 3 *queis* addas plurima Græca :

4 *Impetigem* jungas ; Sic *Conjunx* conjugis edit.

1 As *Pax pacis* ; 2 but *Lex legis*, &c. 3 *Sphinx Sphingis*, *Phryx Phryggis*.  
4 *Impetex* *impetigis*.

1 E per *i* mutabunt polysyllaba : 2 quam retinebunt *Myrmex*, & *Vervex*, *Aquilex*, *Halexque*, *Resexque*,  
Atque *Lelex*, *Celex*. 3 *ctilis* optat habere *Supellex*.  
Dic 4 *Senis*, *Noctis*, *Nivis* ; 5 *actis* pauca requirunt.

1 Nouns of more than one Syllable in *ex*, change *e* into *i* in the Genitive ; as *Vertex verticis* ; 2 but *Myrmex myrmecis*, &c. keep *e* unchanged ;  
3 *Supellex supellectilis* ; 4 from *Senex*, *Nox*, *Nix* ; 5 *Hylax Hylactis*,  
*Asiyanax*, *Asiyanactis*.

### Dativus.

Tertius *i* præbit, si demas S genitivo.

As *Patris patri*.

### Accusativus.

1 *Em* casus Ternæ quartus communiter optat.

2 Crescentem Græci per *a* quantum sæpe dedere :

3 Tollitur *Os* purum, quod habet rectum per *Is*, *Ysve*.

1 As *Patrem*. 2 But Greek Nouns which have more Syllables in the Gen. than Nom. have *d* in the Acc. as *Pæan*, *Pæanos* vel *Pæanis*, Acc. *Pæana* rather than *Pæanem* ; Also *Lampa-s* Gen. *dis*, Acc. *dem* vel *das* ;  
3 Except Greek Nouns which have *os* in the Gen. with a Vowel before it, which come from *is* or *ys*, in the Nom. for such have *im* or *in*, in the Accus. according to the following Rule.

1 *Im* dant *Vis*, *Cucumis*, *Ravis*, *Tussisque*, *Sitisque*.

2 Plurima Græca legas etiam per *in*, *imve*, frequenter.

1 As *Vis*, Gen. *vis*. Acc. *Vim* ; *Cucumis*, Gen. *Cucumis*, Acc. *Cucumin* ; but *Cucumer cucumeris* hath *cucumerem* : 2 But Greek Nouns in *IS* or *YS* have *in* or *im* ; as *Genesis*, *genesior* Acc. *gene sim* or *in* ; *Chelys*, *Chelyos*, *Chelyn* ; *Paris* Gen. *Paris* Acc. *Parim* or *Parin* ; But *Paris* *Paridis* vel *Paridos*, hath *Paridem* vel *Parida* ; so that the Formation of the Accusative dependeth upon the Genitive.

*Em* dat & *im* *Buris*, *Pelvis*, cum *Clave Securis*,  
*Et Puppis*, *Turris*, *Restis*, sic *Febris*, *Aqualis*,  
*Et Pestis*, *Navis*, *Torquis*, ; conjunge *Bipennim*.

Ablativus

*Ablativus.**De Substantivis Regula.*

Sextus *e* donabit; sic Miles milite format.

1 At dabit *i* nomen neutrum, quod in *al* vel in *ar* fit,  
Sicut *e*: tolle 2 Jubar, Sal, Far, & Nectar, & Hepar.

3 *I* quoque dat cujus Quartus fiebat in *imve*,  
Aut in: sic Strigilis, cum Mugilis, atque Canalis.

1 Neuters in *al*, *ar*, *e*, form the Abl. in *i*. as hoc Animal, Calcar, Sedile, Abl. Animali, Calcari, Sedili: 2 But Jubar, Abl. Jubare, &c. 3 Nouns which have *im*, or *in* in the Acc. form the Abl. in *i*, as Vis, vim, vi; Paris, Par *im* vel in Abl. Pari; but Paris Paridos hath only Paride.

1 *I* vel *e* formabis, cum Quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit:

Queis addes 2 Finis, Fustis, Pugil & Vigil, Imber, Unguis, Avis, Postis, Vectis, cum Nepte Supellex, Atque Tridens, Classis cum Civis, & Amnis, & Ignis.

1 When the Acc. endeth in *em* or *im*, the Abl. endeth in *e* or *i*: as Febrem vel febrim, Abl. Febre vel febris, &c. 2 Finis, fustis, &c. have also *e* or *i* in the Abl. although only *em* in the Acc. Also Rus, Abl. Rure vel *i*, Vesper *e* vel *i*.

*De Adjectivis Regula.*

1 Mobile quod dedit *e* neutro, dabit *i* modo sexro.

2 In quibus annumeres Menses, ut Aprilis Aprili

3 Mobilibus reliquis *e* vel *i* dabo. Plus cape Pluri.

Semper *e* formabunt tibi Pauper, Sospes & Hospes.

1 An Adjective, whose Neuter endeth in *e* in the Nom. hath only *i* in the Abl. as hic & hæc dulcis & hoc dulce, Abl. dulci. 2 Names of Months, of the third Declension, form likewise the Abl. in *i*, as Aprilis, September, October, November, December, Abl. Aprili, Septembri, &c. 3 as Felice, vel Felici.

*Nom. plur. Mas. aut Fœm. Generis.*

Es primus pluralis habet; Lapides tibi monstrat.

1 *Eis* aut *is* tantum Tralleis, Sardeisque requirunt.

Interdum Gadeis, Alpeis, quibus addito Syrteis.

1 Tralleis and Sardeis, have only *eis* or *is*, but not *es*; also Gades, and sometimes Gadeis, &c.

*Nom. Acc. Voc. Pl. Neut. Generis,**Quando a, quando ia formandum.*

1 Quod dedit *i* sexro (2 nisi comparat) hoc *ia* ponit Degener atque Vetus per *a* tantum flectere oportet.

3 Si sextus solum formabit *e*, non *ia* pones.

1 As hoc Animal, Abl. Animali. Nom. pl. animalia; Felix, Abl. felic-e vel *i*, Nom. pl. Felicia; 2 But Comparatives have only *a*: as Melior, Abl. *e* or *i*, Nom. Meliora, not *ia*. 3 Caput, Abl. Capite, Nom. Pl. Capita.



## DECLENSIONS of NOUNS.

### Genitivus Pluralis.

1 Græca per *on* flectas; 2 per *& um*, per *iumve* Latina.

1 *Lampas*, *Lampadon*; 2 Some Latin Nouns have *um*, as *Caput Capitum*; and some have *ium*, as *Animal Animalium*.

### Formantia ium.

1 Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit ante.

2 Tolle *Vigil*, *Supplex*, *Opifex*, *Vetus & Pugil*, & quod

3 Comparat, excepto *Plus*, *artificem*, *strigilemque*,  
Atque *Inopem*, *Memorem*, *Consortem* jungito, & 4 Orta  
A *Pede*, & 5 *Capio*; quibus addas *Compos & Impos*,  
*Degener*, atque *Dives*; 6 quædam contracta videbis.

1 Ashoc *Sedile*, Abl. *sedili*, Gen. *sedilium*; *Felix*. Abl. *e* vel *i*, Gen. *ium* 2 *Vigil*, *Supplex*, &c. have *um*. 3 Comparatives have also *um*; (except *plus*) as *Melior meliorum*, *Artifex artificum*, &c. 4 as *Quadrupes quadrupedum*. 5 *Particeps participum*; 6 as *Animantum* for *Animantium*.

### Formantia um

1 Quod dedit *e* tantum sexto, dabit *um* Genitivo.

2 Donat *ium* *Samnis*, *Linter*, *Caro*, *Dos*, *Uter*, *Os*, *Os*,  
*Glis*, *Faux*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Cor*, *Lis*, *Cos*, cum *Mure*, *Quiritem*.

3 Præbet *ium* cujus rectum duo consona claudunt.

4 As dat *ium* Latiale, magis 5 polysyllaba dant *um*.  
*Bosque boum* semper plurali dat Genitivo.

1 As *Capit*, *capite capitum*; 2 But *Samnis*, *Linter*, &c. have *ium*. 3 Nouns which end with two Consonants, have *ium*; as *Gens gentium*; *Cohors cohortium*; *Septuaginta septuagintium*. 4 Latin Nouns in *as*, have *ium*, as *Mas marium*; 5 as *Civitas civitatum*, rather than *civitatum*.

1 Non crescens, per *ium* facit, *es* aut *is*, Genitivum.

Tolle *Canis*, *Panis*, *Vates*, *Juvenis*, *Volucrisque*,  
*Indolem* & adjungas, nec non *prolem sobolemque*.

2 Flecte etiam per *ium*, quæ sunt pluralia tantum.

Excipe *Opes*, *Proceres*, *Lemures*, *Luceres*, *Ceieresque*,

Et cum *Cælitibus*, *Majores* atque *Minores*.

1 Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increaling in the Gen. sing, have *ium*; as *Sedes sedis sedium*; *Mensis mensis mensium*; But *Canis Panis*, &c. have *um*. 2 Nouns which want the sing. have *ium*; as *Manes Manium*, *Fores forium*; But *Opes proceres*, &c. have *um*,

### Dativus Pluralis.

1 Tertius est in *ibus*: *Bos bobus* flecte *bubusque*.

2 Ma Græcum, ternò *tibus* aut *tis*, sed mage *tis* dat.

1 As *Homo hominibus*. 2 Greek Nouns in *ma* have in the Dative and Abl. plur, *ribus* or *tis*, but rather *tis*; as *Poema poematibus*, *poematis*; *Epigramma Epigrammatibus*, vel potius *Epigrammatis*; because the Old Latins said hoc *Poematum*, *Epigrammatum*, &c.

Accusativus

*Accusativus Pluralis.*

1 *Es* Quartus pluralis habet: 2 sed cum Genitivus Format *ium*, Quartum vel in *eis*, vel in *is* quoque pones: 3 *As* quoque formabit, cum quartus *a* præbuit ante.

1 *As Homo homines.* 2 When the Gen. endeth in *ium*, the Acc. may End in *es*, *eis*, or *is*. as *Urbs*, Gen. *urbium*, Acc. *urbes*, or *urbeis*, or *Urbis*; *Omnes omnium*, *omnes*, or *omneis*, or *omnis*; But *Tralleis* and *Sardeis* have Only *eis*, or *is*; as in the Nom. plur. 3 *As Lampas* Acc. sing. *Lampadem*, vel *Lampada*, and from hence the Acc. plur. makes *Lampades* vel *Lampadas*.

## The Fourth DECLENSION.

1 *Quarta* dat *us* recto, & *u*, prius invariaturum.  
2 *Us* Genitivus habet: Per *uis* flexere vetusti.  
3 *Tertius* optat *ui*: Quandoque per *u* quoque lectus.  
4 *Um* retinet Quartus. 5 Fit Sextus in *u* tibi casus.  
6 *Um* quarto, reliquis *u* casibus optat *Iesus*.

1 Nouns in the fourth Declension end in *us*, and *u*. These in *u* are not declined in the Sing. 2 *As Fructus*, or in *uis*; as *ejus annis causa*, *Terent.* 3 *Fructus*, or in *u*; as *parce metu*, for *metui*. *Virg.* 4 *Fructum*. 6 *Iesus*, Acc. *Iesum*, Gen. Dat. Voc. Abl. *Iesu*.

*Numerus Pluralis.*

1 *Primus* pluralis cum Quarto semper in *us* fit.  
2 Dat Genitivus *uum*. 3 Per *ibus* formato Dativum.  
4 *Dani Ubus*, *Artus*, *Acus*, *Ficus*, *Tribus* & *Lacus*, *Arcus*,  
Et *Specus* atque *Vernu*, *Partus*, *Quercus*, quoque *Portus*.

1 *As* Nom & Acc. *Fructus*. 2 *Fructuum* 3. *Fructibus*. 4 But *Artus*, *Acus*, &c. have *ubus*, to distinguish them from the Dat. and Abl. of *Arx Aribus*, *Arx Arcibus*.

## The Fifth DECLENSION.

1 *Es* Rectus. Genitivus 2 *ei*. Sic flecte Dativum.  
3 *Em* poscit Quartus. 4. Fit Sextus in *e* tibi casus,  
5 *Primus* Pluralis, cum Quarto semper in *es* fit.  
6 *Erum* dat Patrius. 7 Ternum formabis in *ebus*.

1 Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *es*; as *Res*. 2 Gen. & Dat. *Rei*, of two Syllables. 3 *Rem*. 4 *Re*. 5 Nom. & Acc. plur. *Res*. 6 *Rerum*. 7 *Rebus*.

Nouns compounded of two Nom. Cases, are declined in both Words as Nom. *Res-publica*, Gen. *Rei-publicæ*, &c. But *Alter-uter*, Gen. *Alter-utrius*, &c. hath the first Nom. undeclined.

Nouns compounded of a Nom. and a Gen. or any other Case, are declined only in the Word of the Nom. as Nom. *Pater-Familias*. Gen. *Patris-Familias*, &c. *Juris-Consultus*, Gen. *Juris-Consulti*, &c.

Nouns

*Annotationes in Quartam & Quintam Declinationem.*

1 Nos opinamur tres Declinationes sufficere posse; quia nomina Quartæ Declinationis olim flectebantur per Tertiam; ut *Grus gruis, Sus suis*; nunc vero contractæ, in quibusdam casibus, novam Declinationis faciem induunt; ut *Manus manuis contracte manus Acc. manuem contracte manum, Abl. manue contracte manu, Pl. manues contractæ manus, &c.*

2 Nomina Quintæ Declinationis, singulas Tertiz Terminationes retinent, nisi in Gen. Sing. hoc pacto, Nom. *es*; Gen. *ei*, Dat. *ei*, Acc. *em*, Voc. *es*, Abl. *e*, &c.

## Irregular Nouns.

*These want the Plural Number.*

| Masculines, |                     | Feminines, |                           | Neuters. |                      |
|-------------|---------------------|------------|---------------------------|----------|----------------------|
| Aer,        | <i>the Air.</i>     | Fama,      | <i>Fame.</i>              | Ævum,    | <i>an Age.</i>       |
| Æther,      | <i>the Sky.</i>     | Fames,     | <i>Hunger.</i>            | Cœnum,   | <i>Dirt.</i>         |
| Fimus,      | <i>Dung.</i>        | Fuga,      | <i>Flight.</i>            | Leithum, | <i>Death.</i>        |
| Fumus,      | <i>Smoak.</i>       | Humus,     | <i>the Ground.</i>        | Nectar,  | <i>Nectar.</i>       |
| Limus,      | <i>Slime.</i>       | Indoles,   | <i>Nature.</i>            | Pelagus, | <i>the Sea.</i>      |
| Nemo,       | <i>no Body.</i>     | Lux,       | <i>Light.</i>             | Solum,   | <i>the Ground.</i>   |
| Pontus,     | <i>the Sea.</i>     | Mors,      | <i>Death.</i>             | Ver,     | <i>the Spring.</i>   |
| Pulvis,     | <i>Dust.</i>        | Pax,       | <i>Peace.</i>             | Virus,   | <i>Poyson.</i>       |
| Ros,        | <i>Dew.</i>         | Sitis,     | <i>Thirst.</i>            | Vulgus,  | <i>the Rabble.</i>   |
| Sanguis,    | <i>Blood.</i>       | Salus,     | <i>Safety.</i>            | Fœnum,   | <i>Hay.</i>          |
| Vesper,     | <i>the Evening.</i> | Plebs,     | <i>the Common People.</i> | Fel,     | <i>Gall.</i>         |
|             |                     |            |                           | Jubar,   | <i>the Sun-beam.</i> |
|             |                     |            |                           | Lutum,   | <i>Clay.</i>         |

Propria sunt tantum numero flectenda priori.

His jungas Herbas, Frumenta, Metalla, Liquores, Libras, Mensuras, nec non Abstractaque & Artes,

*Proper Names want the Plural Number; as these of*

|          |          |            |           |          |        |
|----------|----------|------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| Gods,    | Men,     | Countries, | Towns,    | Rivers,  | Hills, |
| Jupiter, | Jacobus, | Scotia,    | Londonum, | Tibris,  | Ætna,  |
| Alfo,    | Herbs,   | Grains,    | Metals,   | Liquors, |        |
|          | Ruta,    | Triticum,  | Aurum,    | Lac,     |        |

Things sold by Weight, Measure, Abstract Nouns, Sciences, Butyrum, Pannus, Justitia, Rhetorica.

Abstract Nouns are Substantives derived from Adjectives; as Justitia, Juventus; from Justus, Juvenis.

*These want the Singular Number.*

| Masculines, |                    | Feminines, |                        | Neuters,   |                  |
|-------------|--------------------|------------|------------------------|------------|------------------|
| Liberi,     | <i>Children.</i>   | Calendæ,   | <i>Calends</i>         | Arma,      | <i>Arms.</i>     |
| Manes,      | <i>Ghosts.</i>     | Idus,      | <i>Ides.</i>           | Extæ,      | <i>Intrails.</i> |
| Majores,    | <i>Ancestors.</i>  | Nonæ,      | <i>Nones.</i>          | Castra,    | <i>Tents.</i>    |
| Minores,    | <i>Successors.</i> | Divitiæ,   | <i>Riches.</i>         | Mœnia,     | <i>Walls.</i>    |
| Primores,   | <i>the chief.</i>  | Grates,    | <i>Thanks.</i>         | Munia,     | <i>Offices.</i>  |
| Penates,    | <i>House-Gods.</i> | Induciæ,   | <i>Truce or Peace.</i> | Præcordia, | <i>Bowels.</i>   |
| Proceres,   | <i>Nobles.</i>     | Infidia,   | <i>Snares.</i>         |            |                  |
| Posterî,    | <i>Posterity.</i>  | Nugæ,      | <i>Trifles.</i>        |            |                  |
| Superi,     | <i>Gods above.</i> | Nuptiæ,    | <i>Marriage.</i>       |            |                  |
| Inferi,     | <i>Gods below.</i> | Tenebræ,   | <i>Darkness.</i>       |            |                  |

Distri-



Distribuens numerus, cuique est a Cardine nomen,  
*Tot, Quot*, cum natis; semper præeunte carebunt:  
 Adjungas Ludos, Urbes, & Festa, Librosque.

Distributive Numbers, as *Singuli, Bini, Terni*, &c. And Cardinal Numbers, as *Duo, Tres, Quatuor*, &c. want the Singular: Also *Tot, Quot*, with their Compounds, *Aliquot, Quotquot, Totidem*: Likewise many Names of Games, Towns, Feasts, Books,  
 as *Megalenses, Philippi, Saturnalia, Bucolica*.

## Defective Nouns.

1 Some Words have but one Case, viz. the Abl. as *Assu, Jussu, Natu, Noctu, Diu, Permissu, Promtu, Rogatu, Sponte*.

2 Some have only two, as *Dica, dicam; Suppetia, suppetiar; Inicia, inficias*.

3 Some have three Cases Sing.

| Gen.          | Acc.       | Abl.      |
|---------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Oap-is</i> | <i>em,</i> | <i>e.</i> |
| <i>Op-is</i>  | <i>em,</i> | <i>e.</i> |
| <i>Rec-is</i> | <i>em,</i> | <i>e.</i> |
| <i>ic-is,</i> | <i>em,</i> | <i>e.</i> |

4 Some have all the Cases Plur.

5 Some have only four Cases Sing. and all the Plur. as,

| Gen.            | Dat.      | Acc.       | Abl.      |
|-----------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| <i>ition-is</i> | <i>i,</i> | <i>em,</i> | <i>e,</i> |
| <i>ug-is,</i>   | <i>i,</i> | <i>em,</i> | <i>e.</i> |

6 *Nemo* wants the Voc. sing. and all the Plur.

7 Nom. *Vis*, Gen. *vis*, Acc. *vim*, Abl. *vi*, wanting the Dat. and Voc. plur. *Vires, virium*, &c.

8 All Words which we use not the Voc. in *English*, want it in *Latin*; as *Qui, Qualis, Quisque, Quis, Siquis, Nullus, Neuter, Nemo*, &c. Likewise all Pronouns want the Voc. except *Tu, Meus, Noster, Offrar*.

9 All Words of the fifth Declen-

sion want the Gen. Dat. and Abl. plur. except *Res, Dies, Species, Facies*.

10 *Forum, Os, oris, Jus, Mare, Rus, Thus*, want the Gen. Dat. and Abl. plur.

11 *Plus* wants the Dat. and Voc. sing. and in the Nom. and Acc. it is used as a Subst. of the Neuter Gender; but in all other Cases it is an Adj.

12 Many Nouns are not declined as.

1 *Nil, Nihil, Instar, Fas, Nefas*.

2 All Nouns in *i*, as *Gummi*.

3 Nouns in *u*, in the sing. as *Cornu*.

4 Names of Letters, as *a, b, c*.

5 Words taken materially, as *Tuum seire*.

6 *Tot, Quot, Quatuor, Quinque, Sex*, and so forward to *Centum*, are also undeclined: But *Ducenti, a, Gen. orum, arum, orum*, &c. Likewise *Trecenti, Quadringenti, Quingenti*, &c.

Obs. The Subst. *Mille* is not declined in the Sing. and in the Plur. makes *Millia millium*, &c. as *Mille hominum*.

The Adjective *Mille* wants the Sing. and is not declined in the Plur. as *Mille homines*.

## Redundant Nouns.

Many Words have indifferent terminations in the Nom. *Arbor, velor; Baculus, vel; Clypeus, velum*.

Some Nouns are of the second

and fourth Decl. as Nom. *Domus*, Gen. *i, velus*, Abl. *o vel ui*, Ac. *um, Vocus*, Abl. *o* plur. Nom. & Voc. *us*, Gen. *-orum vel -uum*, Dat. *ibus*, Acc. *os vel us*.

## DECLENSIONS of NOUNS.

Tolle me. *mu, mi, mis* ;  
 Si declinare *Domus* vis.  
 3 *Laurus*, Gen. *i* vel *us*, Abl.  
*o* vel *u*. plur. Acc. *os* vel *us*, in all  
 other Cases like *Ventus*.

4. *Col. us*, Gen. *i* vel *us*, Abl. *o*,  
 vel *u*. in all other Cases as *Ventus*.  
 5 *Quercus*, Gen. *i* vel *us*, plur.  
 Gen. *orum*, vel *uum*, in other Cases  
 as *Fructus*.

## Variable Nouns.

1 Some Nouns are Neut. sing.  
 and Mas. plur. as

*Argos* } Pl. { *i orum*.  
*Caelum i*

Hoc *Vas* is, Pl. hæc *Vasa*. *orum*.

2 Some in the Sing. are Mas. in  
 the Plur. Mas. or Neut. as

*Forcus* } Pl. { *i, vel a*  
*Locus*

3 Some in the Sing. are Neut,  
 in the Plur. Mas. or Neut, as,

*Frænum*, } Pl. { *-i, vel -a*.  
*Filum*,  
*Rastrum*,

4 Some in the Sing. are Fem. in  
 the Plur. Neut. as

*Pergamus i* } Pl. { *a orum*  
*Supellex stilis* } *ctilia ium*

5 Some in the Sing. are Neut.  
 in the Plur. Fem. as.

*Balneum*, } Pl. { *a arum*  
*Delicium*,  
*Epulum*,  
*Nundinum*,

## Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives may be Compared, to whose *English* you may put *er*, and  
*est*, *more* and *most*. As *Hard*, *Harder*, *Hardest*; or, *more hard*, *most*  
*hard*. There are three Degrees of Comparison, the Positive, as *Durus*;  
 Comparative, as *Durior*; Superlative, as *Durissimus*.

### Regular Comparison.

- 1 Dat formam medio Gradui primus positivi  
 Casus in *i*, tamen or conjungi postulat usque.
- 2 Dat quoque supremo, cui junges S *Simus* apte.
- 3 Si Positivus in *er* fuerit, *rimus* additur illi.

1 If you add *or* to the first Case of the Positive that ends in *i*, then  
 you have the Comparative; as *Durus*, *duri*, *duri or*. 2 If you add to it  
*ssimus*, you have the Superlative; as *Durus*, *duri*, *duri ssimus*: Also *Mol-*  
*lis*, Gen. *Mollis*, Dat. *Molli*, *mollior*, *Mollissimus*. 3 When the Pos-  
 itive endeth in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rimus* to the  
 Nom. as *Tener*, *Tener rimus*,

### Irregular Comparison.

- At *Bonus* & *melior* dat & *optimus*, & *Malus* optat  
*Pessimus* & *pejor*. *Parvus* minor ac *minimus* dat.  
*Maximus* & *major* *Magnus*. 1 dat *plurimus* & *plus*  
 In Neutro *Multus*; sed *plus* plurale dat omne.
- 2 Hæc *Facilis*, *Gracilis*, *Agilis*, *Similis*que, *Humilis*que,  
 Dant *limus*, is dempto. 3. A *Vetus* estque *veterrimus* apte.
  - 4 In *Dicus*, atque *Ficus*, *loquus* & *volus* entior optant;  
 Aque gradu terno, formant *entissimus* apte.

5 *Mirificus* dat *mirificissimus*. 6 *Inferus* autem *Infimus* ac *imus*. 7 *Superus* *summus*que *supremus*. 8 *Posterus* & *postremus*. 9 *Maturus* *rimus* optat *Velissimus*. At *Dexter*, *Citer*, atque *Sinister* habebunt *Hæc timus*. 11 Adde *Exter* quod & *extremus* tibi donat. 12 *Nequior* & *Nequam* *nequissimus* optat habere.

1 *Multus* plurimus *multa plurima*, but in the Neuter add *plus* as *multum plus plurimum*: And in the Plur. *plus* is added to all the Genders. 2 *Facilis* *facilior* *facillimus*, &c. 3 *Vetus* *veterior* *veterrimus*. 4 Adj. ending in *Dicus* *Ficus*, *Loquus*, *volus*, change *us* into *entior* for the Comp. and *entissimus* for the Sup. as *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*. Also *Magnificus*, *magniloquus*, *Benevolus*, &c. 5 *Mirificus* *entior*, *mirificissimus*. 6 *Inferus* *inferior* *infimus* vel *imus*. 7 *Superus* *superior* *supremus* vel *summus*. 8 *Posterus* *posterior* or *postremus*. 9 *Maturus*, *maturior*, *maturimus*, vel *maturissimus*. 10 *Dexter*, *dexterior*, *dextimus*, &c. 11 *Exter*, *exterior* or *extimus*, vel *extremus*. 12 *Nequam* Indeclinabile *Nequior*, *Nequissimus*.

*These want the Positive.*

*Hæc viduata* gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo; *Ultimus*, *ulterior*; *Prior* & *Primus*; *Propior*que *Proximus*; *Ocyor* atque *Ocyssimus* adjiciatur.

*These want the Comparative*

*Multa* gradu careant medio; velut *Inclutus*, atque *Indidus*, & *Invitus*, *Falsus*, *Bellus*que, *Sacer*que.

*These want the Superlative.*

*Hæc superante* carent, *Juvenis* quod *junior* optat, atque *Senex*, *Dives*, *Satur*, *Ingens*, ac *Adolescens*.

*These have only the Comparative.*

*Anterior* solum est; huic junge *Libentior* apte.

*Us* si vocalis præeat, nunquam gradus adfit.

Adjectives having a Vowel before *us*, are not compared; but instead of Comp. and Sup. take before them *magis*, and *maxime*, as *Pius*, *magis pius*, *maxime pius*; Gen. *pii*, *magis pii*, *maxime pii*, &c. Also *Ardus*, *ardens*, *Sireneus*, &c.

## The First Conjugation.

*Ami* præterito, dabit *atum*, Prima, supino.

*Exceptions.*

*Do* dedit atque *datum* vult; *Sto* stetit indeque *statum*;

*Ex Sto* 2 *Compositum* stitit atque *stitum* dat & *atum*.

*Lavo* vult *lavi*, *lautum* simul atque *lavatum*.

*Poto* magis 3 *potum*. *Juvi* *Futum*que *Juvare*.

1 *Do* dedi *datum*; also *Circundo*, *Pessundo*, *Verundo*, *Satisdo*: But all the other Compounds of *Do* are of the third Conjugation. 2 *Asto* *astiti* *stitum* vel *astatum*. 3 *Poto* *potavi* *potatum*, or rather *Potum*.

1 *Præ-*



## The First CONJUGATION.

1 Præbet *ui per itum* *Cubo*, cum *Sono* *junge* *Crepare*,  
Et *Domo*, sive *Tono*, *Veto* cum *Plico*. 2 sed datur usque  
*Avi* & *ui Plico* compositis cum Præpositura:

3 *Supplicat avi atum*; genitumque ex nomine solum.  
Præbet *ui per etum* 4 *Frico* cum *Seco*, *junge* *Necare*.  
*Nexuit* & *nexum nexo*. *Micui mico* 5 tantum.

1 *Cubo cubui cubitum*, &c. 2 The Compounds of *Plico* with Propo-  
sitions have *avi atum*, or *ui itum*; as *Explico, explicui, explicitum*, vel  
*explicavi, explicatum*, &c. 3 But *Supplicio* hath only *avi, atum*: Also  
*Plico* when compounded with Nouns; as *Multiplico, Triplico, Multi-*  
*plicavi, Multiplicatum*, &c. 4 *Frico, fricui, frictum*, &c. 5 *Mico, mi-*  
*cui, micare* wanting the Supine.

## The Second Conjugation.

Altera præterito dat *ui*, dat *itumque* supino.

## Exceptions B E O.

Præterito *Jubeo, Jussi, Jussumque* Supino;  
*Sorbeo psi prum* dat: 1 Vel *normam rite reservat*.

1 *Sorbo, sorpsi, sorptum*, vel *Sorbui, sorbitum*.

## C E O.

1 Dat *Doceo doctum*. 2 *Mistum* dat *Misceo. Censum*  
*Censeo: Mulceo si sum. Luceo xi* absque supino.

1 *Docui doctum*. 2 *Miscui, mistum*, vel *mixtum*. 3 *Censui, censum*.

## D E O.

Dant *di sum* *Prandet, Videt, & Sedet*; 1 huic dato *sessum*.

2 *Ardeo vult arsi* tantum: sic *Strideo stridi*.

3 Utque *momordi morsum a Mordeo; Tondeo, Pendet,*  
*Spondeo, Sic faciunt. Dant si sum Rideo, Suadet.*

*Nideo* præterito *spoliabitur* atque supino.

1 *Sedi sessum*. 2 *Ardeo, strideo*, want the Supines. 3 *Momordi mor-*  
*sum, Totondi tonsum, Pependi pensum, Sponendi sponsum*.

## G E O.

1 *Xi etum* dant *Mulget, Luger*, quibus additur *Anget*:  
*Indulget si tum* format: Sed *Tergeo si sum*.

2 *Urgeo si tantum*, cum *Fulget, Turget & Alget*.

1 *Mulxi mulctum*, &c. 2 *Urgeo, urxi, urgere*, &c. without the supines.

## I E O.

*Vult Cieo civi* atque *citum*. *Vieo evit & etum*.

## L E O.

*Pi tum* formabunt *Flet, Plet*, cum *Deleo*: 1 *junge*

## The Second CONJUGATION.

**Ex Oleo nata; atqui vult Adolevit adultum.**

**Polleo præterito privabitur atque supino.**

1 *Oleo olui olitum*, or rather, *Oleui oletum*; but its Compounds have *evi itum* as *Aboleo*, *Aboleui*, *Abolitum*, &c.

### M E O.

**Formabit Timeo timui nullumque supinum.**

### N E O.

**Dat Maneo mansi mansum. Neo nevit & etum.**

1 *Imminet imminui tantum.* 2 *Teneo dato tentum.*

3 *Abstineo nullum video retinere supinum.*

1 *Immineo imminui*, wanting the supine. 2 *Tenui tentum.* 3 *Abstinni abstinere.*

### Q U E O.

**Torqueo formari torfi tortumque videbis.**

### R E O.

**Hareo vult hafi atque hasum: dat Torreo tostum.**

*Torreo, torruī, tostum.*

### V E O.

**Dic Moveo movi motum; 1 conformia junge.**

2 *Dic Fautum, Cautum.* 3 *Veō Neutra carento supinis.*

**Connivet vi xique dabit, nullumque supinum.**

*Foveo, fovi, fotum, &c.* 2 *Faveo, favi, fantum.* *Caveo, cavi, cantum.* 3 *Paveo, pavi, pavere.*

### Annotation.

1 **Quod dat ui neutrale caret plerumque supino.**

2 **Poscit itum Valeo, Placeo, Careo, Liceoque,**

**Pareoque, & Jaceo, Lateo, Noceo, Doleoque.**

1 By Neuter Verbs here are understood such as end in *O*, and are not read in *OR*; as *Sileo, filui, filere.* *Studeo, studui, studere.* *Timeo, timui, timere, &c.* 2 But *Valeo, Placeo, &c.* have *ui, itum.*

## The Third Conjugation.

### B O.

1 **Bo bi tumque facit.** 2 **Scabo, Lambo carento supinis.**

3 **Orta Cubo cubui flectas, cubitumque supino.**

**Dant psi prum Nubo, Scribo, quibus addito Sorbo.**

1 *Bibo, bibi, bibitum, &c.* 2 *Scabo, scabere. Lambo, lambere.* 3 The Compounds of *Cubo*, which have *M* before *Bo*, are in the Third; and these which want *M* in the first, as *Accumb-o-is, Accub-o-as*, and all of them have *ui itum.*

## C O.

Ico ci *etum* vult. Vinco vici dato *victum*.

Vult Dico dixi *dictum*: Sic flectito Duco.

1 Dat Parco parsi *parsum*, atque *pepercit itumque*.

1 Parco, parsi, *parsum*, vel *peperci*, *parcitum*.

## S C O.

1 Sco muto in *vi tum*. 2 Sed *pasco* dat tibi *pastum*.

Dat per *itum* 3 *Agnosco*, *Cognosco*. 4 *Poposcit habeto*

*Posco*; velut *Disco* *didici*, per *itumque* *supino*.

*Compesco* per *ui* dat *itum*, *dispescoque* *par sit*.

*Conquinisco* dabit *conquexi*, tolle *supinum*.

Nil dat *Fatisco*, *Glisco*; 5 *Inceptivaque* *verba*.

1 *Cresco*, *crevi*, *cretum*, &c. 2 *Pavi*, *pastum*. 3 *Agnovi*, *agnitum*. *Cognovi*, *cognitum*. 4 *Poposci*, *poscitum*. *Didisci*, *discitum*. 5 Inceptive Verbs denote Beginning or Increase, and end in *Sco*; as *Calesco*, I wax hot; *Frigeſco*, I wax cold.

## D O.

Do verto in *di sum*. *Rudo*, *Strido*, *carento* *supinis*.

As *Scando*, *ſcandi*, *ſcanſum*. *Edo*, *edi*, *eſum*, &c.

## Exceptions.

Dat *Cado* *præterito cecidi*, *caſumque* *ſupino*.

1 *Occido* ſic *Recido* dant *caſum*; 2 *cætëra* non dant.

*Cedo* *monophthongon ceſſi ceſſumque* *tenebit*.

At cum *diphthongo* formabit *Cado cecidi*

*Caſum*: Sed 3 *ſoboles cidi ciſumque*. *Pependi*

Et *penſum* *Pendo* dat. *Pedo* *pepedit*, *itumque*.

*Tendo* *tetendit* habet, *tenſum* *tentumque* *frequenter*.

*Tundo* facit *tutudi tunſum*: 4 *compoſitaque tuſum*.

5 *Pando* etiam *paſſum*. 6 *Natum Edo* format & *eſtum*.

*Scindo* dabit *ſcidi ſciſſum*. *Fidi* quoque *fiſſum*

*Findo* dat. Aſt *Fundo* *fudi fuſumque* *tenebit*.

Si *ſum* dant *Ludo*, *Claudo* cum *Rodere*, *Plaudo*,

*Divido* cum *Vado*, *Rado* ceu *Ladere*, *Trudo*.

7 *Natum ex do Ternæ didit* atque *ditum* dabit *uſque*.

Dic tamen *abſcondi*, per *itum*. 8 Nil *Sido* requirit.

1 *Occido*, *occidi*, *occaſum*. *Recido*, *recidi*, *recaſum*. 2 All the other Compounds of *Cado* want the *Supine*; as *Incido*, *Accido*. 3 *Occido*, *occidi*, *occiſum*, &c. 4 *Contundo*, *contudi*, *contuſum*. 5 *Pando*, *pandi*, *panſum*, vel *paſſum*. 6 *Comedo*, *comedi*, *comeſum*, vel *comeſum*. 7 The Compounds of *Do*, which are of the third Conjugation, have *didi*, *ditum*, as *Addo*, *addidi*, *additum*; but theſe of the firſt have *didi*, *datum*. See the Rule, *Do dedit atque datum*. 8 *Sido*, *ſidere*, wanting the perfect and *ſupine*; yet its Compounds have *ſedi*, *ſeſſum*, from *ſedeo*; as *Aſſido*, *aſſedi*, *aſſeſſum*. *Reſido*, *reſedi*, *reſeſſum*.



# The Third CONJUGATION.

27

## G O, G U O.

1 Go vel Guo, xi *etumque* facit. 2 Tamen ista supinis  
N tollunt Pingo, Stringo, cum Fingere Ringo.  
Tango facit tetigi tactum. 3 Dat Ago egit & actum :  
4 Sed Dego, Satago, non admisere supinum.  
Et rexi rectum, Pergo Surgoque, requirunt.  
Ambigo nil format, cui Vergo jungere debes.  
Vult Frango fregi fractum, Pegi pepigique,  
Et panxi, pactum, pango capiet. Lego gi *etum*.  
5 Negligo xi *etum* vult, Intelligo, Diligo, junge.  
Dat Pungo pupugi, punxi, punctum venit inde.  
In si sum Spargo, Mergo, Tergoque locabis.  
Per xi xum Figo, Frigo, formata videbis.  
Sed Clango, Ningo, Sugo, ceu Lingit & Angit.  
Dant xi praterito, sed deficiente supino.

1 Rego, rexi, rectum. Extinguo, extinxi, extinctum, &c. 2 Pinxi, pi-  
ctum, &c. 3 Also its Compounds, as Perago, peregi, peractum. Redigo, re-  
degi, redactum. 4 Degi, degere, Sategi, satagere. 5 Neglexi, neglectum, &c.

## H O.

Ho xi *etumque* dabit; Traho cum Veho, sint tibi testes.

## I O.

1 In Spicio, aut licio quod fit, petit exit & *etum*.  
2 Elicui elicitedum. 3 Facit & Facit, exit & actum.  
Fodeo dat fodi fossum. 4 Fugi fugitumque.  
Ivi itum Cupio. 5 Sapui sapitumque supino.  
Dic Capiio cepi captum. Rapio rapui ptum.  
Dat Pario peperit partum paritum. Quatioque  
Dat quassi quassum: 6 Cussi cussum dato proli.  
Meio facit Minxi mictum, olim Mingo ferebant.

1 Verbs ending in Spicio, or Licio, have exi *etum*; as Aspicio, aspexi,  
aspectum. Allicio, allexi, allectum. 2 Elicio hath elicui, elicitedum. 3  
Facio, feci, factum. Jacio, jeci, jactum. 4 Fugio, fugi, fugitum. 5 Sapivi,  
itum, long; or, Sapui itum, short. 6 Concutio, concussi, concussum, &c.

## L O.

1 Lo, dat ui. 2 Colo, Consulo & Occulo, dantur in ultum.  
3 Altum dic vel itum. 4 Molitum molo. 5 Celloque celsum.  
Callo facit ceculi culsum. 6 Pepuli dato pulsum.  
7 Velli vel vulsi dat vulsum. Fallo fefelli  
Falsum. Sublatum dat Tollo sustulit. Atque  
Sallo facit falli falsum. Sed flectito Psallo  
Praterito psalli, nullo comitante supino.

1 Colo colui, Alo alui. 2 A general Rule cannot be given for the  
Supine; Colo, consulo and occulo have ultum; Colui, culsum, &c. 3 Alo,  
alui

## The Third CONJUGATION.

*alui, altum vel alitum. 4 Molui, molitum. 5 Cello, cellui, celsum. Cello, ceculi, culsum. 6 Pello, pepuli, pulsum. 7 Vello, velli, vel vulsi, vulsum.*

## M O.

1 *Mo per ui dat itum. 2 Tremo ponitur absque supino. Dant 3 psi ptum Demo, Promo cum Sumere, Como. Emi emptum dat Emo. pressi pressum Premo donat.*

1 *Fremo, fremui, fremitum. 2 Tremui, tremere. 3 Dempfi, demptum, vel demsi, demtum, &c. cum, vel sine P.*

## N O.

*Pono facit posui positum. Genui genitumque Gigno dat. Cerno crevi cretumque requirit. Flecte Cano cecini cantum: 1 Compostaque centum, Et cinui. 2 Temno temsi temtumque supino. 3 Dic Sprevi spretum. Stravi vult sternere stratum. Et Lino dat lini livi levive litumque. Flecte Sino sivi, atque situm formato supinum.*

1 *Pracino, pracinui, pracentum, &c. 2 Temsi, temtum, vel tempfi, temptum, cum vel sine P. 3 Sperno.*

## P O.

1 *Po psi ptumque facit. Rupi ruptum dabo Rumpa. Et Strepo dat strepui pariter strepitumque requirit.*

1 *Carpo, carpsi, carptum, &c.*

## Q U O.

*Dat Coquo præterito coxi, coctumque supino. 1 Vult Lingo liqui tantum: compostaque licium.*

1 *Liqui, linquere, wanting the Supine; but its Compounds have Licium, as Relinquo, reliqui, relictum, &c.*

## R O.

*Quaro quasivi quasitum. Dat Tero trivi Et tritum. Atque tuli latum Fero semper habebit. Atque Gero semper gessi gestumque tenebit. Curro cucurri cursum. Vix Furo præteritum dat. Uro ussi ac ustum. 1 Verro ri si dato versum. Et Sero dat sevi atque satum; 2 nata exiit itumque: Ast erui atque ertum, cum planto haud significarint.*

1 *Verri, vel versi, versum. 2 The Compounds of Sero, which change not the Signification of the Simple, have evi, itum, as CAssero to sow or plant near by, assevi, assitum: But CAssero, I affirm, asserui, assertum, and so the rest.*

## S O.

1 *So sivi situm. 2 Pinso suit indeque pistum. 3 Depsui a depso. Viso visi absque supino.*

1 *Farese.*

1 *Faceſſo ſivi ſitum*, *Capelſo ſivi ſitum*. *Laceſſo ſivi ſitum*; from which Perfects, *v* or *vi* is often taken away; *Faceſſivi faceſſi* vel *faceſſi*: And alſo *it* from their Supines; as *Faceſſitum* vel *faceſſum*. 2 *Pinſui pinſum*, vel *piſtum*. 3 *Depſo depſui depſere*, wanting the ſupine.

T O.

*Xi xum dant Flecto, Plecto*. Sed *xi xuit & xum* dant *Necto & Pecto*. *Peto ſuſcipit iuit & itum*. *Mitto facit miſſi miſſum*. 1 Et *Meto meſſuit eſſum*. *Sterto tuit abſque ſupino*. Nil neutrum *Siſto*: *Stitit atque ſtitum dato natis*. *Siſto* ſed *Activum ſtitit atque ſtatum capit apte*.

1 *Meto meſſui meſſum*. 2 *Stertui ſtertere*. 3 *Siſto*, when Neuter, hath either perfect nor ſupine; but its Compounds have *ſtiti ſtitum*; as *Reſto reſtiti reſtitum*. 4 *Siſto ſtiti ſtatum*, when active.

V O.

*Dat Vivo xi etum*. *Solvo ſolvique ſolutum*: ſic *Volvo*. *Calvo calvi facit abſque ſupino*. *Datque Lavo lavi lotum, dum tertia flectit*.

U O.

*Vult uo ſemper ui, dans utum*. *Vult Struo xi etum*. *Datque Fluo xi xum*. 2 *Pluo vi* vel *ui dat & utum*. *Vultque Ruo ruitum*: 4 *dat utum proles tibi ſolum*. *Nulla ſupina dabunt Metuo, Luo, Congruo, ſicut Innuo cum 6 fociis, Cluo, Reſpuo, & Ingruo, junctis*.

1 *Acuo acui acutum*. 2 *Pluo plui* vel *pluvi plutum*. 3 *Ruo rui ruitum*. *Diruo dirui dirutum*. 5 Theſe following have *ui* in the perfect, and want the Supine; as *Metuo metui metuere*: 6 *Innuo innui innuere*.

X O.

*Nexo xui xum vult*. *Texo xuit indeque textum*. *Nexo nexui nexum nexere*; vel *Nexo nexas primæ*.

## The Fourth Conjugation.

*vi præterito, dabit itum* Quarta ſupino.

As *Audio audiui auditum*.

Exceptions.

*Singultit vult ſingultum*: 2 *Sepelire ſepultum*. *Vaneo dat vanum*. *Venio veni dato ventum*. *vincio dat vinxi vinctum*: 4 *cui Sancio jungas*. *Vult Amicit xi etum vulgo*; *dat ui, ſimul iui*. *Haurio ſi ſtum dat*. *Sepſi dat ſepio ſeptum*: *it pariter 7 campſi camptum ſibi Cambio poſcit*.



1 *Singultio singultivi singultum.* 2 *Sepelio sepelivi sepultum.* 3 *Veni venivi* or rather *venii venum.* 4 *Sanxi sanctum,* or *sancivi itum.* 5 *Amicio amixi amictum,* or *amicui amicivi amictum.* 6 *Hausi haustum,* or *haurivi hauritum:* 7 or *Cambio-vi itum.*

1 *Dat Salio salui saltum:* 2 *sed nata per ultum.*

*Sarcio si sartum.* *Farsi dat Farcio fartum.*

*Sentio dat sensi sensum:* sic *Raucio rausi*

*Rausum* donabit. *Fulsi dat Fulcio fultum.*

*Ex Pario* 3 *natum,* per *ui* *mutatur & ertum.*

*Comperio, Reperitque tamen ri* *poscit, & ertum.*

1 *Salio* (to Salt) *Salivi salitum* only; but *Salio* (to leap or jump) *Salui saltum,* or *salivi itum.* 2 *Infilio insilui insultum.* 3 *Aperio aperui apertum.*

*Nil Ferio* donat. *Nil dant meditantia verba.*

*Parturio, Esurio, vi tum* dant *Nupturioque.*

## Compound Verbs.

*Compositum simplexque modo flectuntur eodem.*

*As Vinco vici victum: Devinco devici devictum.*

### Exceptions.

1 *Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur*  
*Syllaba.* 2 *Sed proles ex Do, Sto Poscoque, Disco,*  
*Præteritum geminant: Nec non* 3 *Præcurro, Repungo.*  
4 *Principium ullius nunquam duplicabo supini.*

1 The Syllable which in the Perfect of a simple Verb is doubled, is not doubled in its Compounds; as *Tendo retendi, Attendo attendi, &c.* *Do dedi, Addo addidi, Sto steti, Asto astiti, Posco poposci, Reposco reposposci, Disco didici, Dedisco dedidici.* 3 *Curro cucurri, Præcurro præcurri;* also the other Compounds of *Curro* with Prepositions; *Repungo Repupugi.* 4 As *Cucurri cursum,* not *Cucursum, &c.*

1 *A* *quoties mutatur in I, per E pone supina.*

2 *Tolle Habeo,* 3 *Do, Go, Sapio, Salio, Statuoque.*

1 When *a* in the Simple, is changed into *i* in the Compound; as *Facio, Efficio,* such Compounds have *E* in the Supine; as *Factum, Effectum, &c.* 2 *Habeo habitum, Inhibeo inhibitum* 3 Also Verbs in *Do* and *Go,* as *Cado casum, Occido occasum. Ago actum, Redigo redactum, Sapio sapitum, Desipio desipitum, Salio saltum, Insilio insultum, Statuo Statutum, Instituo institutum.* Also *Placeo placitum, Displiceo displicitum,*

*Præteritis quæcunque carent, spoliato supinis.*

## Verbs in OR.

1 *Præteritum nullum format verbum, quod in or fit;*

*Mutuo participans dat præteritum tamen illi:*

*Huic Sum* sive *fui* semper *conjungere debes.*

2 *Activum verbum, si desit, fingere oportet.*

1 Passive Verbs want the perfect Tense; but this is supplied with the perfect Participle, and the auxiliary Verb *Sum* or *Fui*; as *Amor amatus sum* vel *fui*, &c. 2 In Verbs which have no Active, (such as Deponents) we must fancy a regular active; as *vereo verui veritum*, and from *verui* to form *veritus*, by changing *M* into *S*.

*Exceptions from the 2d Conjugation.*

*Pat* *Pateor fassus, confessus Confiteor*que.  
*vult* *Reor usque ratus.* \**Misereri flecte misertus.*

*Exceptions from the 3d Conjugation.*

*vult* *Labor lapsus. Nanciscor nactus habebit.*  
*oblitusque obliviscor. Gradior dato gressus.*  
*questus* 1 *Queror. Atque Fruor fructus fruitusque*  
*ic Patior passus. Perpeffus perpetior vult.*  
*Nitor nisus, nixusve. Sequor*que *secutus.*  
*or in usus abit. Format Loquor usque locutus.*  
*Expergisci experrectus. Pactusque Paciscor.*  
*ciscor forimes ultus. Fessusque Fatiscor.*  
*ominiscor erit commentus. Sic Adipiscor*  
*ormat adeptus: huic Profiscor junge profectus.*  
*ptus Apiscor habet. Nascor natusque tenebit.*  
*vult Orior ortus. Morior sic mortuus optat.*  
1 *Queror questus*; but *Quæror quæsitus.* 2 *Expergiscor experrectus.*

*Exceptions from the 4th Conjugation.*

*etior exoptat* 1 *mensus. vult Ordior orsus,*  
*nunc orditus profert. Assentior autem*  
*ssensus vult. Experior*que *expertus habebit.*  
*erior facit opertus; Plauto*que 2 *peritus.*  
1 *Or Metitus.* 2 *For Operitus.*

Irregular Verbs.

*Gaudeo cum Soleo, Fit, Fidit, Mæret & Audet,*  
*assivum dant præteritum: 2 sed utrumque creabunt*  
*esco, Caret, Furo, Prændet, Nubit* 3 *Miseret*que.  
*eno, Piget, Tadet, Pudet & Licet: Addito Poto,*  
*Libet, & Titubo, Placeo, reliquis volo jungi.*

1 *Gavisus, Solitus, Factus, Fissus, Mæstus, Ausus sum.* 2 *Suevi, vel*  
*etus sum, & sic de cæt.* 3 *Miseruit vel misertum est. Sic Piget, Pu-*  
*t, Licet, Libet, Tæduit, & pertasum est.*  
Not. *Vapulo, Væneo, Fio, Exulo, Nuho, Liceo.* These have a passive  
signification, under an active Termination, as *Vapulo*, to be whipt, &c.

Defective Verbs.

*il* formant *Vescor, Liquor, Medeor, Reminiscor,*  
*ravertor, Ringor, Divertor, Diffiteor*que.

These

These want the perfect, and have an active Signification under a passive Termination; as *Vescor*, I eat, &c.

*Aio*, *ais*, *ait*, Pl. *aiunt*. Imp. *Aiebam*, *bas*, *bat*, *bamus*, *batis*, *bant*, Imp. Perat. *Ai*. Subj. *Aias*, *aiat*. Pl. *Aiatis*, *aiant*.

*Inquam* vel *inquio*, *quis*, *quit*, *quimus*, *quitis*, *quiunt*. Imp *Inqui*, *ebat*, *bant*. Perf. *Inquisti*. Fut *Inquies*, *inquiet*. Imperat *Inque*, *inquito*.

*Edo*, to Eat, sequentia a *sum* mutuatur, *Es*, *est*, *estis*, *esto*, *este*, *estote*, *essem*, *esses*, *esset*, *essemus*, *essetis*, *essent*, *esse*; Pariter in Compositione, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*.

*Apago*, *apagete*. i. e. *abduc*, *abducite*.

*Ave*, *avete*, *aveto*, *avetore*, *avebis*, *avere*. Similiter *Salve*.

*Cedo*, *cedite*, i. e. *Dic* vel *da*; *dicite* vel *date*.

*Faxo* vel *Faxim*, *Faxis*, *Faxit*, *Faxint*.

*Forem*, *es*, *et*, *emus*, *etis*, *ent*, *fore*, i. e. futurum *esse*.

*Ovat*, *Ovans*. *Quæso*, *quæsumus*.

*Odi*, *Cæpi*, *Memini*, *Novi*, have only the Tenses in *ram*, *rim*, *sem*, *re*, *je*, only *Memini* hath in the Imperative *memento*, *mementore*. These four perfect Tenses have both the Signification of the present and Perf. as *Odi*, I hate, or have hated, and so of the rest.

These first Persons *Dor*, *For*, *Der*, are not in use.

For *dice*, *duce*, *face*, *fere*, we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*; but the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, have *E*; as *Effice*, *resice*, &c.

## Species or Kinds of Verbs.

Verbs, in respect of Form, are *Primitive*; as *Lego*, I read; or *Derivative*, of which there are five Kinds.

1. *Inceptives* in *Sco*, formed from the second Person of the present as *Caleſco*, I wax hot.

2. *Frequentatives* for the most Part in *TO*, formed from the latter supine; as *Clamito* I cry often: *Lectito*, I read often.

3. *Desideratives* in *rio*, formed from the latter supine; as *Scripturio*, I desire to write.

4. *Diminutives* in *illo*; as *Sorbillo*, I sup a little.

5. *Imitatives* in *isso*; as *Græcisso*, I imitate the Greek.

Obs. *Inceptives* are of the third Conjugation; *Desideratives* of the fourth; and the rest of the first.

## Of Points and Notes.

So many Verbs as are either express'd or understood in a Sentence, so many Points there must be in it.

Comma [,] is the shortest Stop, and is used after the more imperfect Parts of a Sentence belonging to the same Noun or Verb.

Semicolon [;] is a Note of somewhat longer Breathing, and is mainly used, when doubtful or opposite Things are express'd.

Colon [:] is a Note of suspending the Voice yet longer, and noteth the perfect Part of a Sentence, the whole Sense being not yet finished.

A Period or full Stop [.] is a Note of longest Breathing, and is put after every complete Sentence, where the Sense is fully finished.

A Point of Interrogation [?] is used when a Question is asked.

A Point of Exclamation or Admiration [!] is used when we express any Thing with Wonder.

Parenthesis ( ) incloseth one Sentence within the Bosom of another which would continue complete, although the inclosed Sentence were wanting.



A *Crotchet* ['] includes a Word or Sentence explaining what went before. An *Apostroph* ['] is used when a Letter is cast out, as *Dixin'* for *dixi*. *fine*; and is often used to denote the Gen. Case, as my *Brother's Book*.

*Hyphen* [-] is used to divide the several integral Parts of a Compound Word, as *Pale-face Sun-burnt*: And being placed at the End of a Line, it denotes, that (for want of Room) some Part of that Word is carried to the Beginning of the next Line: No Letters of a Syllable being separated.

*Dieresis* [..] is used when one Syllable is made two; as *Evoluisse*, for *evoluisse*.

*Induction* [Δ] is used to bring in a Word interlined.

*Quotation* [""] is used in the Margin, when a Sentence is quoted out of another Author.

This Note ['] is used to distinguish Adverbs from Nouns; as *Stultè. Unà*.

This Note [^] is used, 1. Over Ablatives in *a*, and Genitives in *us*, as *Pennâ, Fructûs*. 2. Over Syllables long by Nature as *Legère* in the Perfect, and Future Passive. 3. Over Words contracted by Syncopa; as *amâsti*, for *amavisti*; *deâm*, for *deorum*. 4. Over *Ergô* when it is taken for *Causa*.

## Of Capital Letters.

Every Verse, Sentence, Title, Proper Name, and Adjectives derived from Proper Names, must begin with a Capital Letter; and frequently Names of Offices, and Arts. In other Cases, use smaller Letters.

## Figures belonging to Words.

*Prosthesis*, adds to the Beginning; as *gnatus* for *natus*.

*Aphæresis*, takes from the Beginning; as *pone* for *depone*.

*Syncopa*, takes from the Middle; as *novi* for *novisti*.

*Epenthesis*, adds in the Middle; as *repperit* for *reperit*.

*Apocope*, takes from the End; as *dic* for *dice*.

*Paragoge*, adds to the End; as *dicier* for *dici*.

*Craesis*, contracts two Syllables into one; as *Phæton* for *Phaeton*.

*Diaeresis*, divides one Syllable into two; as *Sylvæ* for *Sylva*.

*Metathesis*, changes the Place of a Letter; as *Flandre* for *Flander*.

*Antithesis*, changes the Letter itself; as *faciundum* for *faciendum*.

# SYNTAX.

## The First Concord.

**MO**bile vult fixi Casum, Numerumque, Genusque.

The Adjective agrees with the Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as *Bonus Puer, Bona Penna, Bonum Pomum*.

## The Second Concord.

**C**asu conveniunt eadem signantia fixa.

Two (or more) Substantives signifying the same Thing, agree in Case; as *Regina Anna, Vidi Reginam Annam*.

## Appendix.

*MO*bile quadrabit fixo, fixum quoque fixo,  
*S*i mediet substans verbum, Gestusque, Vocatusque,

The Adjective and Substantive agree, or two Substantives signifying the same Thing, although a Substantive Verb, or of Gesture, or of Calling come between; as *Penna est bona, Regina vocatur Anna.*

Verba Substantiva; *Sum, Fio, Forem, Existo.* Verba Gestus; *Dormio, Cubo, Incedo, Curro, Jaceo.* Verba Vocandi; *Nominor, Appellor, Dicor, Vocor, Nuncupor;* & iis similia; *Scribor, Salutor, Habeor, Existimor.*

### The Third Concord.

Et Genus & Numerum Referens præeuntis habebit.

The Relative *Qui, quæ, quod,* agrees with a Substantive going before, in Gender and Number; as *Puer qui discit, Mulier quæ cantat, Animal quod currit.*

*Inter fixa duo. Referens quadrabit utriusvis.*

A Relative, between two Substantives of a diverse Gender, may agree with either; as *Est animal quod, or, quem vocamus hominem, Stella quæ, or, qui Phaeton dicitur.*

*Est referens neutrum sensum cum respicit omnem.*

When a whole Sentence stands for the Antecedent, the Relative is Neuter; as *Quod beatum isti ducunt, uxorem nunquam habui.*

The Case of the Relative dependeth on the following Verb; as *Regina quæ imperat, Regina cui paremus, Regina quam honoramus.* See the New Method.

### The Fourth Concord.

Verbum personam recti numerumque tenebit.

A Verb of the Finite Mood agrees with the Nom. in Number and Person; as *Ego lego, Tu legis, Præceptor docet.*

A Verb between two Nominatives of a diverse Number, may agree with either; as *Omnia pontus erat, or erant.*

A Noun of the singular Number signifying more than one, may have a Verb Sing. or Plur. as *Turba ruit, or ruunt.*

*Quintus personæ præponitur usque secundæ.*

All Vocatives are of the Second Person, and so must be placed before the second Person of a Verb; as *Amice veni.*

Ante volunt quartum verba Infinita tenere.

A Verb of the Infinitive Mood hath the Accus. before it; as *Dicant Regem adventare.* The Nom. before the Verb may be made an Acc. and the Verb put in the Infinitive, leaving out *quod* or *ut*; as *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales; Gaudeo te bene valere.*

### Annotations on Concord.

*Conjunctæ voces pluralia verba reposcunt.*

Two or more Substantives singular (having the Conjunctions, *et ac, atque,* &c or the Præp. *cum* between them) will have a Verb, Adj. or Relative Plur. as *Petrus & Joannes ludunt, Pater & Mater sunt irati, Rex & Regina qui imperant sunt invicti.*

*Plurali verbo potior persona coheret.*

A Verb Plural agrees with the Nom. of the first Person, rather than second; and with the second rather than third; as *Ego & tu studemus, Tu & ille studetis.*

*Mobile præcipuo Generi plurale coheret.*

The Adj. Plur. agrees in Gender with the Substantive Masculine, rather than Feminine; and with the Feminine, rather than Neuter; as *Pater & Mater sunt irati, Lena & Scortum sunt impudicæ.*

*Si Fixa absque anima fuerint, vult Mobile neutrum.*

But

But if the Substantives signify Things without Life, the Adj. is often in the Neuter as *Calamus, Charta & Atramentum sunt necessaria.*

*Quo casu rogitur; tu respondebis eodem.*

The Answer is put in the same Case with the Question, *Quis, quæ, quid; as Cui pares? Resp. Regina, quam vides? Resp. Reginam.*

*Atque Modos similes connectit copula casus.*

These Conjunctions (*et, ac, que, atque, nec, neque, seu, sive, aut, ve, vel*, couple the same Cases and Moods; as *Sede, & lege. Amo Patrem & Matrem.*

*Junguntur verbis Adverbia participisque.*

Adverbs are joyned to Verbs or Participles; as *Bene scribis temerè, judicans.*

## The Genitive Governed.

*Of Substantives governing the Genitive.*

Unum Substantivum aliud regit in Genitivo,  
Sed rei diversæ: Sit testis *Gloria mundi.*

One Substantive governs another (signifying a different Thing) in the Genitive; as *Frustum panis, Liber præceptoris.*

*Mobile seu Referens, si neutrum, vult Genitivum.*

An Adjective or Relative, in the Neuter Gender, may have a Genitive; as *Multum laboris, Quantum pecuniæ.*

After *Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester*, the Genitive of their Primitives *Mei, Tui, Sui, Nostri, Vestri*, are understood, and yet Adjectives agreeing with them are exprest; as *Meum (Sup. mei) solius peccatum corrigi non potest. Ex tuo (Sup. tui) ipsius animo conjecturam feceris.* We say Also *Arma illius, (Sup. viri) Pater hujus, (Sup. pueri.)*

1 In patrio aut sexto, cum fixo Mobile ponas,  
Post aliud Fixum: 2 poterit quoque Mobile jungi.  
Alterutri Fixo: 3 quarto Fixumque videbis.

1 One Substantive governs another, with an Adjective of praise or dispraise in the Genitive or Ablative; as *Puer probæ indolis, or proba indole; Puer duræ cervicis, or dura cervice.* 2 The Adjective may agree with either of the Substantives; as *Petrus est acuti ingenii, or acutus ingenio.* 3 The last Substantive is often put in the Accusative; as *Puer pulcher vultum, Fœmina candida collum.*

*Adjectives Governing the Genitive.*

Mobile significans active dat Genitivum.

An Adjective of an active Signification governs the Genitive; of this Sort are these denoting *Desire, Knowledge, Skill, Ignorance, Guiltiness, Innocency*; as *Cupidus auri, Peritus belli, Doctus Grammaticæ, Ignarus lectionis, Consciens sceleris, Integer vitæ,*

Adj. desiderii; *Ambitosus, Avarus, Avidus, Cupidus: Scientiæ, Calidus, Cerrus, Doctus, Docilis, Gnarus, Memor, Peritus, Præsciens, Prælagus: Ignorantiæ, Anxius, Dubius, Ignarus, Immemor, Imperitus: Reatus, Consciens, Conviectus, Manifestus: Innocentiæ, Innocens, Innoxius, Insons, Integer.* Item quædam in *ax & ns*; ut *Capax, Edax, Ferax, Fugax, Petax, Tenax, Fugiens, Patiens.* Huc refer *Compos, Impos, Emulus, Munificus, Parcus, Prodigus, Providus, Profusus, Securus.*

Dant



## Dant gradus Exsuperans, &amp; Partitiva secundum.

Superlative and partitive Adjectives require the Gen. plur. with which they agree in Gender; as *Unus fratrum, Nulla Sororum, Quod Animalium*. And if the Gender of the Genitive plural be different from the Gender of the Substantive before the Partitive Adjective, then it is more elegant, to make the Adjective agree in Gender with the former Substantive; as *Leo est fortissimus Animalium, Rosa est pulcherrima Florum*.

Partitive Nouns signify Part of many, or many by Parts; as *Alius, Alter, Uter, Neuter, Quis, Aliquis, Nemo, Nullus, Omnis, Multi, Pauci, Quisque, Unus, Duo, Tres, &c. Primus, Secundus, &c.*

Sometimes, after Partitives. we use *de, e, ex, or inter*; as *Unus Fratrum, or de, e, ex Fratribus, or inter Fratres*.

## Verbs Governing the Genitive.

## Dant patrium Satago, Misereri, cum Miseresco.

*Satago, Misereor* and *Miseresco*, require the Gen. as *Suarum rerum satagit, Misereor tui, Misereſcite Regis*: But *Miseror* hath the Acc. as *sortem miseratur iniquam*.

*Accuso, Damno, Laudo*; contraria junge,  
Criminis aut poenæ; dant sextum, five secundum.

Verbs of *Accusing, Condemning, Praising*; also *Excusing, Acquitting, Rebuking*, require the Accus. of the Person, with the Gen. or Abl. of the Crime; as *Accuso, Condemno, Absolvo te furti, or furto; Laudo, Reprehendo te probitatis, or probitate*.

Verba Accusandi; *Accuso, Ago, Alligo, Arcesso, Arguo, Desero, Incuso, Excusandi; Excuso, Pargo, Expurgo. Damnandi; Damno, Condemno, Multo, Convinco. Absolvendi; Absolvo, Solvo, Libero, Pargo. Laudandi; Laudo, Miror, Probo, Commendo. Vituperandi; Vitupero, Corripio, Reprehendo, Increpo.*

## Est cum composito, &amp; Refert connecte secundo.

*Est* (pro pertinet) also *Interest*, and *Refert* require the Gen. as *Liber est Præceptoris, Pecus est Melibæi, Interest, Refert, Regis. Interest* and *Refert* require these Ablatives, *Mea, Tua, Sua, Nostra, Vestra, Cuius* And *Est* these Nominatives, *Meum, Tuum, Suum, Nostrum, Vestrum*.

*Pœnitet & Tadet, Miseret, Pudet & Piget, optant*  
*Accusativum Personæ cum Genitivo.*

These 5 Verbs require the Acc. of the Person with the Gen. of the Thing; as *Pœnitet, Pudet me Peccati; Piget, Tadet me Vitæ; Miseret me tui*. Or the Gen. may be changed into an Infinitive; as *Pœnitet me peccati, or peccasse, &c.*

Verba Obliviscor, Reminiscitur atque Recordor,  
Et Memini, Memoror, patrium quantumve requirunt.

These 5 Verbs require the Gen. or Acc. as *Obliviscor, Reminiscor, Recordor, Lektionis, or lectionem*.

## Adverbs Governing the Genitive.

*Temporis atque Loci, Quantique Adverbia quædam,*  
*Exoptant patrium: dic, venimus illius Ergo.*

Adverbs

Adverbs of Time, Place and Quantity, also *Ergo* for Cause, require the Gen. of Time; as *Nunc, Tunc temporis; Interea loci*. Of Place; as *Longe, Nusquam, Minime gentium*. Of Quantity; as *Abunde, Affatim, Partim, Nimis, Satis, Parum vini*. Note, *En, Ecce*, have the Nom. or Acc. after them. *Ah, Oh, Proh, Heu, Hem*, may have the Nom. Acc. or Voc. after them; *Hai*, and *Væ*, the Dat.

## The Dative Governed.

### The Dative after EST.

Dant substantia Verbum, fixo comitante, Dativum.

*Est* (pro habeo) requires the Dat. of the Person, with a Nom. of the Thing; as *Est mihi liber, Sunt nobis penna*.

Dant binos Ternos, *Sum, Duco, Do, similesque*.

*Est* (pro assero) also *Duco, Do, Verto, Habeo, Dono, Tribuo*, require two Dat. the first of the Person, the second of the Thing; as *Regina est nobis presidio, Quod aliis vitio vertis, id tibi ne laudi duxeris*.

### The Dative after Verbs, and Adjectives.

Ternum vox quævis acquisitiva requirit.

All Verbs. and many Adj. may have a Dat. Case of the Person or Thing, which receiveth any Profit or Disprofit, and these Kind of Verbs and Adj. are said to be put *Acquisitively*. Verbs; as *Malefacio nemini, Benefacio omnibus, Cede majori, Conserva mihi hunc librum, Narra mihi historiam, Non omnibus dormio. Tibi aras, tibi seris, tibi occas, tibi metis, Cano progressui, or receptui; Victis dominabitur Argis, Noceo nemini*. But *Ledo* requires the Acc. as *Ledo neminem*. Adjectives, as *Benignus omnibus, Fidus amicis, Gratus cuique, Utilis reipublicæ, Molestus amicis, Periculosus patriæ, Obnoxius salutis, Infestus hostibus, Gravis stomacho, Secundus nulli*.

Hæc casum ternum cupiunt, quandoque secundum:

*Affinis, Similis, Communis, par propriusque, Finitimus, Fidus, Conterminus atque Superstes, Consciens & Socius, Conformis sive propinquus, Et Vicinus, Amicus, avet jungi his Alienus.*

These Adjectives require commonly the Dat. and but seldom the Gen. as *Similis patris, or patri; Consciens sceleris, or sceleris; Alienus consilii, or consilio*.

Multa regunt Ternum quæ constant Præposituris;  
scilicet *Ante, Sub, In, Post, Præ, Super, Inter, Ad, Ob, Con*.

Verbs compounded with *ante, sub, in, &c.* require a Dat. as *Antecellit omnibus, Meo subestis imperio, Insidet equo, Posponit pecuniam famæ. Præcipuit mihi librum, Parentes suis liberis sæpe supersunt. Interesse jactantur concioni. Affidet mihi. Nocturnum studium salutis obest. Componere magna parvis*. Some of these Verbs have also the Acc. as *Antecello, Anteeo, ccedo*, because the Prepositions wherewith they are compounded govern the Acc.

Ternum

**Ternum donabunt Impersonalia verba.**

Impersonal Verbs require the Dat. as *Confert, Contingit, Stat, Dolet, Evenit, Præstat, Restat mihi.*

**Dicito sed Spectat, res pertinet, attinet ad me.**

These 3 Impersonal Verbs have the Acc. with *ad*, as *Hic liber attinet, pertinet, spectat ad me.*

**Ternum pro quarto, aut sexto cum præposituris Ponimus; It Clamor Cælo pro more poetæ.**

The Poets often use the Dat. for the Acc. or Abl. with a Preposition as *It clamor Cælo*, for *ad Cælum*. *Nec cernitur ulli*, for *ab ullo*.

*In bilis, ac in dus, poscunt nonnulla Dativum.*

Verbals in *bilis*, and Futures in *dus*, require the Dat. as *Pax optabilis omnibus. Impenetrabilis armis. Rex amandus omnibus. Flendus mihi.*

*Quædam, more patrum, cupiunt Adverbia Ternum.*

Some Adverbs require the Dat. after the Manner of the Adjectives from whence they are derived, as *Petrus facit inutiliter sibi, Canit similiter huic*: For *inutilis, similis* require the Dat.

## The Accusative Governed.

**Activum verbum post se Quartum retinebit.**

Verbs of an active Signification govern the Acc. as *Time Deum. Venerare parentes. Loquere pauca.* Sometimes a Word materially taken as *Flecte penna, Conjuga Amo*; or the whole Phrase after the Verb is put for the Acc. as *Scin' ubi sit frater meus. Nostin' quota sit hora.*

*Quartum Neutra regunt, active sumpta, frequenter.*

Neuter Verbs put for Actives require the Acc. as *Quem hic manes, pro expectas. Corydon ardebat Alexin, pro Vehementer amabat.*

*Cognati Quartum sermonis Neutra tenebunt.*

Neuter Verbs govern the Acc. of a near Signification; especially when an Adj. is joyned with it, as *Curro cursum. Vivo vitam jucundam. Eo iter longum.* Or the Acc. may be changed into an Abl. as *Vivo vitam hilarum, or vita hilari.*

*Accusativum Quanti verbum omne requirit.*

Any Verb, whether Active, Neuter. &c. can govern the Acc. of Quantity; as *Multum tremo, Nil miror, Homo homini quid præstat.*

*Quartum sic quædam Græcorum more tenebunt.*

The Poets make Passive and Neuter Verbs govern the Accus. in Imitation of the Greek; as *Petrus rubet faciem. Vulneratur caput. Truncatur brachium.*

**Compositum verbum casum dat præposituræ.**

Many Verbs govern the Acc. or Abl. by virtue of the Preposition where with they are compounded, as *Adeamus Scholam. Omni spe decidit, Exeo, egredior domum, or domo*, for *e, ex*; and *extra* in Composition hath the same Power. The Preposition may also be repeated after the Verb; as *Adeamus ad Scholam. Exiit ex Urbe.*

*Cælo, Rogo, & Doceo, varios jungunt sibi Quartos: Sed Passiva regunt unum tantummodo Quartum.*



*Celo*, and Verbs of asking, as *Rogo, Oro, Obsecro, Peto, Posco, Posulo*; also of Teaching; as *Doceo, Dedoceo*, &c. require two Acc. the first of the Person, the second of the Thing; as *Doceo te Grammaticam, Rogo præceptorem veniam. Celavit me librum*. Their passive Verbs have only the Acc. of the Thing, the Accusative of the Person being changed into a Nom. as *Rogo te veniam, tu rogaris a me veniam. Doceo discipulos Grammaticam, discipuli docentur Grammaticam. Supplico* governs the Dat. by reason of its Composition.

Dant quantum *Decet, Juvat & Delectat, Oportet*.

These 4 Verbs require the Acc. of the Person, with the Infinitive; as *Juvat, delectat me studere*. At more Græco cum Dat. as *Quando ita tibi Juvat*.

*Præterit & Fallit, Latet & Fugit*, adjice quarto.

These 4 Verbs have also the Acc. but want the Infinitive; as *Te non præterit, quam sit difficile. Non me fugit*.

### Of the Infinitive Mood.

Verbo finito Modus infinitus adhæret;

Mobilibusque etiam subjungi sæpius optat.

Infinitives are governed by Verbs, or Adjectives; as *Cupio scire. Vereor scere. Cupidus scire. Dignus amari*.

### Of Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

Verbum Participans sequitur, primumque Supinum

Active signans: Pariterque Gerundia jungit.

Participles, Gerunds and Supines govern the same Case that their Verbs govern; as *Repetens-endi, endo, -endum; Repetitum, repetiturus lectionem*, because we say *repeto lectionem*.

Mobile vel Fixum regit id quod desinit in *DI*.

The Gerunds in *DI* are governed of Adjectives and Substantives; as *Cupidus discendi. Tempus legendi*.

*DO* præcedunt *In, Ab, Ex, Cum, De*, similesque.

The Gerunds in *Do* are governed of *In, ab, ex, cum, de*; as *vaco a bibendo, De vivendo, In legendo*. Or the Prep. may be understood; *Sum desessus legendo. Disces scribere scribendo*.

*DUM* finitis *Ad, Ob, Inter & Ante* præbunt.

The Gerunds in *Dum* are governed of *ad, ob, inter, ante*; as *ad Scribendum; but more ornately, Scribendi gratia. Inter cœnandum Ante dormiendum*.

*UM*que, necesse notans, petit, est comitante, *Dativum*.

When the Gerund in *Dum* denotes Necessity, it is made by *est* with Dat. as *Legendum est mihi. Moriendum est omnibus*.

### Of Supines.

Verbis, quæ motum signant, prius adde Supinum.

The first supine followeth a Verb of Motion; as *Eo piscatum. Eo ansum*.

*Celo,*

**Mobili-**

Mobilibus subsunt bene posteriora supina.

The latter supine followeth an Adj. as *Turpe dictu. Indignum auditu.*

### Of Time.

Da sextum casum, si tu per *Quando* rogaris.

The Noun of Time answering to the Question, *When*, is put in the Abl. as *Quando venit Rex?* Resp. *Die Saturni, hora Septima.*

*Quamdiu* amat Quartum, quandoque reponito Sextum.

The Noun of Time answering to the Question, *How long?* is put in the Acc. and but seldom in the Abl. as *Quamdiu studuisti?* Resp. *duas horas*, or *duabis horis*: Or we may say *Studui per duas horas.*

### Of Place.

1 Post *Ubi* da Patrio nomen: 2 sed nomina poscunt. Sextum, si Ternæ, vel sint Pluralia tantum.

1 The proper Name of a City or Town answering to the Question, *Where?* is put in the Gen. as *Ubi est Rex?* *Roma, Londini, Edinburgi.*

2 But if the Name of a City or Town be of the third Declension, or want the singular Number, then it is put in the Abl. as, *Ubi est Rex?* Resp. *Athenis, Carthagine* or *Carthagini, Rure* or *Ruri.* Also these, *Militia, Belli, Domi, Humi*, follow this Rule.

Quæstio si fuerit per *Quo*, tunc ponito Quartum.

The proper Name of a City or Town answering to the Question, *Whither?* is put in the Acc. as *Quo ivit Rex?* Resp. *Romam, Londinum, Carthaginem, Athenas, Parisios.* Also *ivit domum, Rus.*

Responde Sexto, si *Qua*, sive *Unde* rogaris.

The proper Name of a City or Town answering to the Question, *Whither?* or *Whence?* is put in the Abl. as *Qua ivit? unde venit Rex?* Resp. *Roma, Londino, Edinburgo, Carthagine, Athenis, Parisiis.* Also *venit Rure, Domo.* We say also, *venit Edinburgum Londino, or per Londinum.*

Obs. 1 The Names of Cities or Towns belonging to the foregoing Rules admit a Preposition, if you add an Adj. or *Urbs*, or *Oppidum* to them as *In Opulento Londino natus est. Profectus est ad doctas Athenas. Ivit ad domum paternam. Est in Urbe Londino.*

Obs. 2 Any other Name of Place or Country, Island, River, Hill, &c. seldom wants a Prep. as *Rex est in Scotia, Anglia, Cæsar pervenit ad Rhenum, ad Aetnam, Ivit ad Templum, ad Forum. Est in Foro, Tempore, Cubiculo, &c.*

### Of Distance of Place.

Vult Quartum Sextumve, loci Distantia, casum.

The Distance from Place to Place, is put in the Acc. or Abl. as *Glasgow distat Edinburgo triginta milliaria, or miliaribus.*

### Of Prepositions.

A Preposition is so called, because it is placed before the Case which governs; except *Usque, Tenus* and *Versus*.

1 Vult *Ad* cum sociis Quartum: 2 velut *Absque* Latinum.

1 These govern the Acc. *Ad, apud, ante, adversum vel adversus, cis, citra, circa vel circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, intra, inter, infra, supra, juxta, ob, pone, propter, prope, per, præter, post, penes, secus, secundum, trans, ultra, as Venit ad forum. Prandet apud Patrem, &c.*

2 These govern the Abl. *a, ab, absque, abs, cum, coram, clam, de, e, ex, pro, præ, palam, sine, procul, tenus. As A pueritia. Ab illo. Abs quovis homine, &c.*

*Sub, Super, In, Subter; Quartum Sextumve requirunt.*

These govern the Acc. or Abl. under various Significations; for which see the New Method.

## The Ablative Governed.

*A* commitante vel *ab*, dant Sextum plurima Verba.

Passive, Neuter, and also some active Verbs require the Ablative with *a*, or *ab*, as *Amor a Patre. Osculor a Matre. Accepi ab illo. Distat ab Urbe. Audiui hoc a Matre.* But the Poets often change this Ablative into a Dative, as *nec cernitur ulli*, for *ab ullo. Eripuit, surripuit mihi librum*, for *a me.*

*Note.* Some Adjectives follow this Rule, with the Preposition express'd or understood; as *Integer a vitiis. Castus a venere. Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus, Sanguine Divum, or ex sanguine divum. Also, poculum ex auro, sup. factum. Fecit cathedram ex ligno.* For the Preposition is usually express'd with the Matter whereof any Thing is made.

*Instrumenta dabis Sexto, Causamque, Modumque.*

The Instrument wherewith, the Cause why, and the Manner how a Thing is done, are put in the Abl. without a Preposition. 1 The Instrument, This answereth to the Question, *Wherewith?* as *Scribo calamo. Scindo panem cultro. Stricto gladio me adortus est.* 2 The Cause, this answereth to the Question, *Why, wherefore?* as *Pallidus metu. Taceo pudore. Horreo frigore. Rubescit ignorantia. Rex dei gratia, & jure hereditario.* 3 The Manner, this answereth to the Question, *How, or after what Manner?* as *Submissa voce cantat. Lento gradu procedit. Suo more docet. Torvis me aspicit oculis. Arte, non dolo te vici.*

*Note.* The Cause and Manner sometimes admit a Preposition; as *Pallidus metu*, or *pro metu*: Also *ob* or *propter metum. Magna cum modestia loquitur.*

*Dat Patrium aut Sextum tibi Copia, sicut Egestas.*

Adjectives, and Verbs of Plenty or want require commonly the Abl. and sometimes the Gen. as *Dives pecoris. Plenus vini, or vino. Expers fraudis, or fraude. Purus sceleris or scelere. Abundat divitiis. Liber scatur erroribus. Vacat culpa. Egeo, Indigeo aris, or ære.*

Adj. *Copiæ; Abundans, Dives, Fœcundus, Plenus, Satur; sed Discontentus, Gravidus, Refertus; fere semper cum Abl. Adj. Inopiæ; Egens, Expers, Inops, Inanis, Immunis: Verba Copiæ; Abundo, Affluo, Compleo, Cumulo, Impleo, Repleo, Scateo, Mano, Luxurio, Saturo. Verba Inopiæ; Deficior, Destitutor, Egeo, Indigeo.*

*Indignus, Dignus, Contentus, Praditus, Orbus Et Vacuus, Cassus; dant Sextum sive Secundum.*

*As dignus laude, praditus virtute, vacuus laboris: But they seldom require the Gen.*



**Dant sextum Fungor, Potior, Fruor, Utor, Abutor, Indigeo, Careo, Vescor, Beo, Victito, Pascor.**

As *Fungor Officio, Potior regno, &c.* Some of these Verbs have also the Acc. as *Mea bona utuntur, Operam abutitur, Fungitur Officium, Urbem potiri.*

**1 Da Pretium Sexto: 2 Nonnunquam rite Secundo.**

1 Verbs of Buying, Selling and Valuing, require the Abl. of the Price, with the Acc. of the Thing bought; as *Emi librum solido, Vendidi cultum duobus assibus, Æstimo te centum libris.* 2 But Verbs of Buying, Selling and Valuing require these Genitives; *Tanti, Quanti, Tantidem, Quanticunque, Parvi, Minoris, Minimi, Magni, Majoris, Maximi, Multi, Pluris, Plurimi, Nihili, Nauci, Flocci;* as *Emi, Vendidi equum magni, Æstimo te nihili, nauci, &c.* We say also *emi, vendidi melius, vilius, carius* Adverbially. *Valeo* requires sometimes the Acc. but more commonly the Abl.

Verba Emendi; *Emo, Comparo; Vendendi; vendo, venundo, vaneo; Æstimandi; Æstimo, Curo, facio, Pendo, Duco.*

**Mobile mensuræ dat Quartum, five Latinum.**

*Altus, Crassus, Densus, Longus, Latus, Profundus,* govern the Measure of a Thing in the Acc. or Abl. as *Turris alta trecentos pedes, or trecentis pedibus: Hic liber est crassus duos digitos, or duobus digitis.*

**Mensuræ excessum, Sexto solummodo profer.**

The Excess of Measure is only put in the Abl. after an Adj. or Verb; as *Excedo te digito. Sum Longior te capite. Item Modico doctior. Digito lato te Procerior.*

**Sextum da Medio gradui: Pretiosius auro.**

The Comparative Degree governs the Abl. as *Candidior nive, or, quam nix est;* but more ornately *Candidior nive.*

**Sed Medius, dictus de binis, dat Genitivum.**

But a Comparative, which is spoken of two Persons, (or Things of the same Nature) governs the Gen. Plur. as *Carolus est senior fratrum: Si duos intelligas fratres: Dextra est fortior manuum.*

**Poscit Opus sextum fixum; sic postulat Usus.**

*Opus* (sub. indecl.) and *Usus* (signifying need) require the Abl. as *Opus est mihi libro. Usus est filio decem argenti minis. Opus* (Adj. indecl.) agrees with its Subj. as *Opus est mihi liber. Opus est nobis Dux.*

**Absque regente, duos Sextos tu sæpe videbis.**

The Abl. Case Absolute, is made thus,

*Cum, Dum, Ubi, Postquam,* being left out, the Nom. before, or the Acc. after the Verb may be turned into an Abl. and the Verb into a Participle agreeing therewith; as *Dum præceptor docet, into præceptore docente: Cum hoc dixisset, into hoc dicto.*

**All Figures in Sentence reduced to Ellipsis.**

*Ellipsis,* is when one Word or more are wanting to make up a regular Construction; as *Ubi ad Dianæ veneris* [sup. templum.] All Figures in Sentences may be reduced to *Ellipsis.* 1 *Appositio;* as *Urbs Roma* [sup. ens,

ens, or quæ est, or dicitur.] 2 *Evocatio*; as, ego pauper canto [sup. qui sum.] 3 *Syllepsis*, vel *Concepcio*; as, ego et tu studemus [i. e. nos] tu et ille studeatis [i. e. vos] duo enim singularia æquipollent plurali. 4 *Prolepsis*; as, duæ aquilæ volaverunt; hæc ab oriente, illa ab occidente [sup. hæc aquila volavit, et illa aquila volavit.] 5 *Zeugma*; as, Iratus Rex est, Reginaque [sup. irata] nihil hic, nisi carmina defunt [sup. deest.] 6 *Antiphrasis*; as, venit in mentem illius diei [sup. recordatio] multa id genus [sup. secundum] 7 *Synthesis*; as, Elephas gravis [sup. foemina.] 8 *Synecdoche*; as, foemina candida collum [sup. secundum] vel collo [sup. cum.] 9 *Gracismus*; as, albus dentes [sup. secundum.]

## Elegancies of Placing.

1 The Subj. in the Voc. Case hath both its Adj. and Verb in the Imperative Mood before itself; as, *vale mi Cicero*. 2 The Case governed is placed before the Word governing it; as *pauci dolorem ferre potuerunt*. 3 The Verb is placed almost always in the End of the Sentence; as, *munificentissimam hostium civitatem Cesar occupavit*. 4 The Relative is placed before the Antecedent; as, *Quos amo, hos castigo*. 5 The Interrogative is placed in the End of the Sentence; as, *partes orationis quot sunt?* 6 The Infinitive Mood is placed before the Finite Mood; as, *Malefacere qui vult nusquam causam non invenit*. 7 Adverbs are placed before Verbs; as, *Laelius Scipione familiarissime utebatur*. 8 The Adj. is placed before the Subj. with some Words between; as, *Gravissima est probi hominis iracundia*. 9 *Quoniam*, *Quia*, *Cum*, and the like, have some Words before them; as, *Omnes cum valemus recta agrotis consilia damus*. 10 Prepositions are often placed between the Adj. and Subj. which they govern; as, *Eadem de causa*.

## Rules for Exposition.

1 Read the Sentence distinctly to a Point, then seek out a Verb agreeing with a Nom. in Number and Person. 2 When you see an Adj. seek out the Subj. agreeing therewith, in Gender, Number and Case. 3 When you see a Gen. Dat. Acc. or Abl. seek out the Verb, or Noun which governs it. 4 When you see an Infinitive Mood, seek out the Finite Mood which governs it. 5 When you see a Verb in the second Person of the Imperative Mood, seek out the Voc. before it. 6 Take an Adverb of Calling (if there be one) with the Voc. Case. 7 Words, suppressed by *Ellipsis*, must be supplied.

# P R O S O D Y.

**A** Syllable is either long, as *Audax*; or short, as *Bene*; or common, as *ne* in *Tenebrae*. The Mark of a long Syllable, is, - of a short v.

## General Rules.

Vocalis longa est, si consona bina sequuntur.

A Vowel before two Consonants, or x, z, j. is long; as *Mars*, *Bellum*, *Vox*, *Gaza*, *Cujus*. This Rule is called Position.

Cum

Cum muta liquidam scribens in syllaba eadem;  
Ancipitem ponas Voëalem quæ brevis esset.

A short Vowel, when a Mute with a Liquid begin the next Syllable, is Common; as *pa* in *pater* is short; but *pa* in *patris* is common; for *t* and *r* are in the same Syllable. So *ob* in *obligo* is long, because *b* and *l* are in diverse Syllables. *A* in *Mater*, *Frater*, *Acer*, *Ater*, is long; therefore it is so in *Matris*, *Fratri*, &c. for a short Vowel becomes common, but a long Vowel is still the same. Mutæ sunt *b, c, d, f, g, p, q, r*. Liquidæ *l, m, n, r*.

1 Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis;  
Ut *Laus*, *Æneas*: 2 sed *præ* subeunte Latina  
Vocali brevio. 3 Contracta est Syllaba longa.

1 All Diphthongs are long; as *Laus*, *Æneas*. 2 *Præ* before a Vowel in Composition is short; as *præi*. 3 All contracted Syllables are long; Coge for Coage.

1 Vocalis brevis ante aliam manet usque Latinis,  
2 Ni capit R *Fio* produc. 3 Et nomina Quintæ.  
*E* servat longum, si præsit *I*, ceu *Speciei*,  
4 Anceps *ius* erit patrio; producit *Alius*:  
*Alterius* brevio. Tantum commune sit *Ohe*.  
*Pompei*, *Cai* produc: 5 Conformia Junge.  
*Dianam* varia. Longa *Aer*, *Dius* & *Eheu*;  
6 Et patrium primæ cum sese solvit in *ai*.  
7 Græcorum voces haud certa lege tenentur.

1 A Vowel before a Vowel in the same Word (tho' *h* comes between) is short, as *Pius*, *Nihil*. 2 But *I* in *Fio*, when *R* follows not, is long; as *Fio*, *fiēbam*, *fiām*; but *i* in *fiērem*, *fiēri*, is short. 3 *e* between *i* and *i* in the fifth Decl. is long; *Diei*, *Speciei*. 4 Genitives in *ius* have *i* common; as *illi*, *unius*; yet these in Prose are long. 5 Also other Vocatives, when *ius* is changed into *i*. 6 As *œulai*. 7 In Greek Words, a Vowel before a Vowel is often long, as *i* in *Latria*, and so sometime short, as *i* in *Sophia*.

## Rules for some First Syllables.

1 Præteritiva tenent primam Dissyllaba longam.  
2 Tolle *Bibit*, *Scidit*, & *Fidit* ac *Tulit*; ortaque *Do*, *Sto*.

1 Preterits of two Syllables have the first long; as *Veni*, *Vidi*, &c.  
2 *Bibi*, *Scidi*, *Fidi*, *Tuli*, *Dedi*, *Steti*, have the first Syllable short.

1 Corripiunt binas geminantia; ceu *ceciderunt*.  
2 Tolle *ceciderunt* a *Cado*; a *Pedo* *pepedi*.

1 When the Preterit of a Verb is doubled, the two first Syllables are short; as *Tango* *terigi*, *Pello* *pepuli*. Sometimes the second is long by Position, as *Tetendi*, *Pependi*, &c. 2 *Cecidi* (from *Cædo*) and *Pepedi* have the second Syllable long.



- 1 *Cuncta supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam.*  
 2 *Præter nata Sero,* 3 *Cieo, Lino, Sto, Sino, Sisto,*  
*Do, Ruo cum Queo, Eo, Reor;* at 4 *staturus atum dat.*

1 Supines of two Syllables have the former long; as *Visum, Lusum, &c.*  
 2 *Satum, Citum, Litum, Statum, &c.* have the former short. 3 *Cieo* (2dæ) hath *citum* short; but *Cieo* (4tæ) hath *citum* long. 4 *Sta* in *staturus* is long; but *sta* in *statum* is short, or rather common.

## Rules for Middle Syllables.

- 1 *Præ tum* vocalem de vi reliquis dabo longam.  
 2 *Quæ* formant aliter, correptum flecte supinum.

1 In every Conjugation, Supines of more than two Syllables have the Vowel before *tum*, long; if it comes from *vi*: As *amavi amatum, delevi deletum, petivi petitum, audiavi auditum.* 2 *Itum* and *utum* are short, when they come not from *ivi*; as *Tacui tacitum Agnovi agnitum, Dirui dirutum*

### 'Of the Increase of Verbs.

A Verb is said to increase, when any Person hath more Syllables than the second of the Present Tense of the Indicative Mood, and the last Vowel of the second Person is the first of the Increase; as *amabamini*; here *ma* is the first, *ba* the second, and *mi* the third Increase.

#### A

*A* crescens produc: Nisi cremento Dare primo.

*A* in the Increase of a Verb is long; as *Amamus, Legebamus, Eramus, &c.* But *A* in the first Increase of *Do* is short; as *Damus, dabam, dato.*

#### E.

- 1 *Ni* subit *R*, produc *E* semper: 2 cum subit *R*, sit Cum socio Ternæ breve præsens. 3 Protrahe *reris.*  
 4 Semper *E* corripitur præ *ram, rim, ro;* 5 *beris* adde.  
 6 In reliquis produc; quamvis 7 *Steterunt* Maro dicat.

*E* in the Increase of a Verb is long, unless *R* follows; as *Amemus, Amaremus, Docemus, Docuissemus, Legebam, Legissemus, Vellemus, Effemus, Fuissimus, &c.* 2 In the third Conjugation, the Present of the Ind. with the first Increase of the Imperf. of the Subjunctive, is short; as *ge* in *Legeris* vel *Lêgere*, also *Legere* in the Imperat. and Infin. but *ge*, in the Future of the Indicative, is long; as *Legar, Legeris* vel *Legere.* 3 *Reris* vel *rere*, in the Imperf. of the Sub. is long, as *Legerer, Legereris* vel *Legerere, docereris, &c.* 4 As *Amaveram, amaverim, amavero, Docueram, rim, ro, &c.* 5 As *Amaberis* vel *amabere, Doceberis* vel *docebere,* But Verbs of the third Conjugation in *Bo* have the Future of the Ind. long; as *Inscribar Inscriberis* vel *inscribere.* 6 *E* in all other Tenses (not spoken of) is long; as *Amaverunt* vel *amavere, Docuerunt, Legerunt, Audiverunt:* 7 Yet *Virgil* makes this Tense short; as.

*Obstupui, steteruntque comæ, & vox faucibus hæsit.*

#### I, O, and U.

- 1 *I* brevia primo cremento, dummodo ternæ sit verbum: 2 Quartæ si sit producere debes.

3 *Ivi* præterito produc: 4 *Sed imus* breviato:  
 5 In subjunctivo, *rimus ritisque* licenter  
 Invenies. *Noliro* vel *Ito*, *Velimus* & *itis*.  
 Et *Simus*, *fitis* produc. 6 *Erit U* breve: non *O*.

1 As *Legimus*, *Legitis*, &c. 2 As *Audimus*, *auditis*, *audito*. 3 As *Perivi*, *peritum*; *audivi*, *auditum*, &c. 4 As *Amavimus*, *docuimus*, *audivimus*, *fuimus*, &c. 5 *Rimus* and *ritis* in the Subjunctive are sometimes long, and sometimes short; 6 As *Nolumus*, *Volumus*, *Sumus*, *Possumus*, *Malumus*. *Amatote*, *Estote*.

### Of the Increase of Nouns

A Noun is said to Increase, when any Case hath more Syllables than the Nom. and the first Vowel of the Increase is that which was the last in the Nom. as *Sermonibus*; here *mo* is the first, and *ni* the second Increase. The first Decl. hath no Increase in the sing.

### The Increase of the Second Decl.

*Altera clementum* curtat: *Producit Iberi*.

The Increase of the second Decl. is short; as *Vir viri*, *Miser miserum*, *mifero*, *miserum*, &c. but *Iber Iberi*, *Ibero*, *Iberum*, long.

### The Increase of the Third Decl.

*A*, and *O*.

1 *Semper A* curtat *atis*. 2 *Quod in O* fit porrigit *onis*:  
*Donat inis* curtum: *Producitur onis* ubique.

1 As *Thema Thematis*. 2 *O* makes *onis* long, *Anio Anienis*; and *in* short, as *Homo hominis*; and *onis* long, as *Sermo sermonis*.

*C*.

*Dices halecis*, nec *spernes Melchisedecis*.

*Halec halecis*, *Melchisedec Melchisedecis*, long.

*D*.

*Davidis* a *David* dices: *Bogudis Bogud* optat.

*David Davidis* short, or *Davidis*: *Bogud Bogudis* short.

*L*.

1 *Mas* tibi curtat *alis*: 2 *Neutrum* producitur *alis*:

3 *Elis*, cum *Solis* produc. 4 *Reliquis* breviatis.

1 As hic *Hannibal Hannibalis*. 2 *Hoc Animal Animalis*. 3 *Daniel Danielis*, *Sol Solis*. 4 *Consul Consulis*, *Vigil Vigilis*.

*N*.

1 *On* nimis incertum est. 2 *Eninis* breve. 3 *Cætera* produc

1 As *Babylon Babylonis*, long; *Dæmon Dæmonis*, short. 2 *Flumen fluminis*. 3 *Pæan Pæanis*. *Siren Sirenis*. *Delphin Delphinis*.

*R*.

1 *Aris* produco neutris: *Nectar*, *Jubar* aufer.

*Protrahe Nar naris*, *Furis*, *Veris*, *Recimeris*,  
*Byzer*, *Ser* et *Iber*. 2 In *ter* *Græcum athere* dempto.

3 Oris ab *or* produc. 4 Cum neutris, corripie Græca.  
Arboris & Memoris brevies; 5 Indictaque cuncta.

1 As hoc Calcar *Calcaris* long; But hic Cæsar *Cæsaris* short. 2 Crater  
Crateris long. 3 Honor *Honoris* long. 4 Hoc Marmor *Marmoris*, Æquor  
Æquoris, &c. Hic Nestor, Hector *oris* short. 5 Mulieris, Martyris,  
uturis short.

A S.

Atis ab *as* produc; ab *Anas anatis* breviato.  
Cætera corripies. *Vasis* producitur apte.

1 As Pietas *Pietatis* long, &c. 2 Mas *Maris*, Pallas *Palladis*, Lampas  
mpadis short. Also Vas *Vadis* short, but Vas *Vasis* long.

E S.

Es breviat: Tollas *Locuples*, *Mercesque Quiesque*,  
Iares: 2 Sic *etis* longabunt plurima Græca.

1 As Miles *Militis*, Interpres *Interpretis*, Ceres *Cereris* short, &c.  
Magnes *Magnetis*, Lebes *Lebetis*, Tapes *Tapetis* long.

I S.

breviat: *Samnis*, *Glis*, *Lis*, *Dis*, tolle *Quirisque*.

As Pulvis *pulveris*, Sanguis *Sanguinis*, Lapis *Lapidis*, Charis *charitis*, &c.  
ort. But *Samnis Samnitis*, *Glis Gliris*, &c. Have the penult long.

O S

ottrahit *os*: Tria corripunt *Bos*, *Compos* & *Impos*.

As Cos *Cotis*, Custos *Custodis* long: *Bos Bovis*, *Compos Compotis*, *Im-*  
*s Impotis* have the penult short.

U S.

Us breviat. 2 Tollas præ *dis*, *ris*, *tis*, quod habebit  
: præter *Pecudis*, *Ligurisque*, *Intercutis* adde.

Atque Gradus medii semper penultima longa est.

1 As Corpus *corporis*, Venus *veneris*, &c. 2 Palus *paludis*, Tellus *telluris*,  
is *rutis*, Virtus *virtutis*, &c. 3 As Melius *melioris*, Pejus *pejoris*.

Bs, Ps, Ms, T.

Consona cum præit S, patrii penultima curta est.

Hinc Cyclops, Seps, Gryps, Conops, Cercops removeto;  
bsque, Europs, Hydrops. Capitis Caput abbreviabit.

As Cælebs *calibis*, Inops *inopis*, Hyems *hyemis*. 2 Cyclops *Cyclæ-*  
, &c. Have the penult Syllable of the Gen. long.

X.

Præ gis vocalem brevio; producito *Lex*, *Rex*.

Ex *icis* abbreviat; *vibex* nisi: 3 Cætera produc.

Corripie *Pix* & *Onyx*, *Fornix* cum *Appendice*, *Varix*

que *Volux*, *Dux*, *Nux*, *CruX*, *Fax*, *Nex*, *Nixque*, *Calyxque*.

As Grex *gregis*, Remex *remigis*, Coniunx *conjugis*, &c. 2 Vertex  
ticis, &c. 3 Pax *pacis*, Vox *vocis*, Felix *felicitis*, &c.

The



## P R O S O D Y.

*The Plural Increase of Nouns.*

A, E, I, O, U.

Pluralis numerus si crescit, protrahit usque

A, simul E, simul O: Tamen U, brevis Ique manebit.

*A E O* in the Plural Increase are long, as *Pennarum, ventorum, dierum, rerum*. But *U* and *I* are short, as *Artubus, Sermionibus*.*Annotations on First and Middle Syllables.*

1. In Words of two Syllables the Quantity of the former is known by Pronunciation, if you prefix a Preposition; as *Sanus*; thus *Sa* in *Sanus* is long; and this is easily discovered by prefixing *in*, as *insanus*: Likewise *Peto* in *Peto* is short, which you will observe, if you prefix *Re*, as *Repeto*.

2. In Words of three Syllables, the Quantity of the Middle Syllable is known by the Pronunciation, as *Homines*; thus *Homines* must be pronounced with the Middle short; and cannot be pronounced *Homines* with the Middle long.

3. In Words of four Syllables, the Quantity of the Middle Syllables is known by reducing them to three Syllables; as *gi* in *vir gine-us* is short, because *gi* in *virginis* is so; likewise *ge* in *legeremus* is short, because it is so in *legerem*.

## Rules for Final Syllables.

A.

1 *A* declinatum brevia: 2 Sed protrahe sextum.

3 Ex Recto longo vocitantem protrahe Græcum.

4 Non flexum produc. 5 *Putā*, sic *Ita* cum *Quia* demas.

1 *A* in the End of a declined Noun is short, as *Bella, Lumina*: 2 As *Penna, Mula*. 3 As *ma* in the Voc. *Thoma* is long, because it is long in the Nom *Thomas*. 4 *A* in the End of Verbs or Nouns undeclined, is long as *Ama, Frustra, Præterea*. 5 *A* in *Putā, Ita, Quia*, is short.

E.

1 *E* brevia. 2 Primæ produc; 3 & nomina quintæ:4 Junge *doce* & *focios*. 5 Monosyllaba protrahe: 6 Dempis Encliticis. Tantum *Bene* cum *Male*, sic *Mage* curtas.

7 At bene produces Adverbia cuncta secundæ.

1 As *Mare, docere, rite*. 2 As *Penelope*. 3 As *re, die*; also its Compounds *Hodie, Quotidie*. 4 As *Doce, stude, vide*. 5 *Me, te, se*; also the Compounds, *Meme, sese*. 6 *Que, ve, ne*, as *Amaque, Deoque*; to which add *ce, pre*, as *Hisce, Meapte*. 7 As *Docte, Doctissime*. Note, *Ferme, Ferre* and *Ohe*, are also long.

I.

1 *I* longum pono. 2 Vocitantem contraho Ternæ;

3 Saepaque Græcorum Ternum Minoidi testis.

Sed *Nisi* sive *Quasi*, *Mihi, Ibi, Sibi, Ubi* variabis;Et *Tibi*, junge *Cui*. 4 Finita per *I* breviabis.

1 As *Venti, Legi*. 2 The Voc. of the third Declension is short; as *Philli*. 3 As *Di*, in *Paridi* is short, when it is considered as a Greek Termination, but long, when considered as a Latin one. 4 As *Moly, cEpy*.

O.

- 1 O commune datur. 2 Produc monosyllaba; 3 jungens Cum terno, sextum: 4 Atque Adverbia nomine nata. At variabo Cito cum Sedulo, Mutuo, Crebro Seroque: Sit curtum Modo solum. Sed breviori 5 Ergo pro Causa non vult. 6 Produco quaterno In Casu nomen, fit cujus in us Genitivus. 7 O Patrii produc. 8 Variato Gerundia cuncta.

1 As Sermo, amo. 2 Do, fio, pro. 3 As Libro, templo. 4 Tanto, quanto, multo, falso. 5 O in Ergo (when taken for Causa) is long. 6 Quaterno Casu, i. e. in quatuor Casibus; as Dido, Echo. 7 As Androgeos, Androgeo. 8 Amando, Docendo.

U, B, D, T.

- 1 U semper produc. 2 B, D, T corripit semper. 1 As Cornu. 2 As Ab, Sub, Sed, Caput.

C.

- 1 C produc: Præter Nec, Donec. Sed variabilis Hic bene pronomen: Fac verbum jungimus isti. 1 As Dic, Hoc, Sic, &c.

L.

- 1 L breve fit. 2 Cum Sol, Sal, Nil; tolluntur Hebræa. 1 As Animal. 2 But Sal, Sol, Nil, are long. Also Hebrew Words, as Michael.

N.

- 1 N produc. Demas An, In, & 2 prolem; Tamen atque. Forsitan, & Forsan, Viden: 3 Huic conformia junge. 4 Quod dat inis curtum est; velut 5 on quod tertia nescit. 6 Corripitur Quartus quando brevis ultima recti est. 1 As Non, Sin. 2 Dein, Proin. 3 Nostin, Egon. 4 Carmen, Pestem. 5 As Ilion, Ilii, Synodos Synodon, in the Acc. 6 As Maria Marian short; Thomas Thomæn, long.

R.

- 1 R brevies. 2 Produc cuius dat Patrius eris; Et Cur, Hir, Far, Lar, Nar, Par, Fur, sicut & Æther. 1 As Pater, Fur. 2 Ver, Crater, &c. also Cur, Hir, &c.

A S.

- 1 As produc. 2 Ternæ pluralis corripit Quartum, 3 Simul & as Rectus, per adis dum patrius exit. 1 As Pietas, Anas. 2 Lampas Lampades, or Lampadas; Tros Troas, or Troas. 3 Lampas Lampadis.

E S.

- 1 Ponitur es longum. 2 Pluralia corripit Græca, Quæ crescunt; Velut es de Sum, Penes additur illi:

G

3 Cum

3 Cum neutris: 4 Et si Patrio penultima curta est Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, Aries, Paries, Abies, Pes.*

1 As *Dies, ames.* 2 Greek Nouns increasing have the Nom. and Voc. Plur. short; as *Lampades*; but not the Acc. 3 As *Hippomanes.* 4 *Es* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of the third Decl. is short, if the Penult of the Gen. be so; as *Miles Militis, Seges Segetis.*

## I S.

1 *Is* brevio. 2 Verum plurales protraho *Casus*: 3 *Isque* quod in Patrio mutatur in *itis & inis*, Aut *entis*. *Varia Glis, Vis.* 4 *Persona secunda* Protrahit *is*, quoties *itis* Plurale reponit.

1 As *Lapis, Amaris, estis.* 2 As *Pennis, Ventis; Omnis, Urbis*; for *Omnes* or *Omneis*, or *Urbeis.* 3 As *Samnis* *Samnitis. Salamis* *Salaminis, Simois* *Simoentis.* 4 *Is* in the Sing. is long when *itis* is so in the Plur. as *Andis* *Auditis, Velis* *Velitis, Possis* *possitis.*

## O S.

1 *Os* produc. 2 *Patrius* brevis est, & *Compos & Impos,* *Osque ossis* præbens. 3 *Rectos* breviato secundæ. 4 *Os recti* produc, quoties tibi *Patrius O* dat.

1 As *Mos, Flos.* 2 *Lampas Lampados.* 3 *Synodos* vel *Synodus.* 4 *Androgeos, Androgeo, &c.*

## U S.

1 *Us* Correpta datur. 2 Monosyllaba cum Genitivis Ternæ, vel Quartæ produc. 3. Numerive secundi In Quarta Primum, Quartum Quintumque: 4 & in *Uris* Dumve *utis* *Patrius*, vel in *udis & untis, odisve* est: 5 Aut *Quintus* fit in *U*, Longus tum *Rectus* habetur.

1 As *Ventus, Amamus.* 2 *Rus, Dido Didus, hujus Fructus.* 3 *Hijos & O Fructus.* 4 *Tellus Telluris, Virtus Virtutis, Palus Paludis, Opuntis, Tripus Tripodis.* 5 *Panthus Panthu.*

## Of Derivative and Compound Words.

## Of Derivative Words.

Derivata Patris servabit dictio normam.

Derivatives usually keep the Quantity of their Primitives; as *mo* in *moveo* is short, therefore it is so in *moves, movet, &c. Movebam* *bas, &c. Movebo* *bis, &c. Move* *moveo, &c. Moveam* *as, &c. Movere* *endi, do, dum, ent.* But *mo* in *Movi* is long, therefore it is so in *Moveram, rim, issem, ero, isse:* Likewise *gui* in *sanguinis* is short, therefore it is so in *sanguineus.*

*Quadam a brevibus deducta, primam producant: ut*

Vox vocis L. a voco B.

Lex Legis L. a Lego B.

Rex Regis L. a Rego B.

Junior L. a Juvenis B.

Mobilis L. a Moveo B.

Humanus L. ab Humo B.

*Quadam*



*Quadam a Longis deducta, primam corripiunt: ut*

Dux Ducis B. a Duco L.

Genui B. a Gigno L.

Dicax B. a Dico L.

Fragilis B. a Frango L.

Arena B. ab areo L.

Sopor B. a Soppo L.

Obs. In this Table L. denotes Longa, and B. Brevis.

*Of Compound Words.*

1 Simplicis observat Mensuram compositivum:

2 Tolle Dicus, 3 Nihilum cum 4 Pronubus, Innubus atque

5 Agnitus, 6 Ambitus cum Cognita; 7 Semisopitus,

8 Pejerat a Furo, cum Dejerat. 9 Ast variatur

Connubium. 10 Contra patrem Comitia dicas.

1 A Compound Word hath the same Quantity with its Simple. although a Diphthong or Vowel be changed; as Lu in Ludo. and La in Lædo are long; therefore Lu in Colludo, and Li in Illido, are also long: Likewise Mo in Moveo, Movebam, Movebo, Movere, is short; therefore Mo in Removeo, Removebam, Removebo, Removere, is also short. 2 Di in Dico is long, but Di in Causidicus, Maledicus, is short. 3 Hi in Nihilum is short, but Hi in Hilum long. 4 Nu in Nubo is long, but Nu in Pronubus, Innubus, short. 5 Ni in Agnitus, Cognitus, is short, but No in the simple Word Notus is long. 6 Bi in Ambitus when it is a Noun, is short; but when it is a Participle it is long. 7 So in Semisopitus is short, in Sopio long. 8 Ju in Furo is long, but Je in Pejero, Dejero, short. 9 Nu in Nubo is long, but Nu in Connubium is common. 10 I in Itum is short, but Mi in Comitium long.

*The Quantity of Prepositions in Composition.*

*Se and Di.*

*Se* produc & *Di*: Præter Dirimo atque Disertus.

*Se* and *Di* in Composition are long; as *Sepono*, *Deduco*: But *Di* in *Dirimo* and *Disertus* is short.

*Re.*

Est *Re* breve: At Refert a Res productio semper.

*Re* in Composition is short, as *Reduco*, *Repono*; but *Re* in *Refert* from *Res* is long.

*Pro*

Est *pro* Breve in Græcis: *Pro* Longum rite Latinis.

Corripies *Pronepos*, *Profugus*, *Profugit*, *Proficiscor*,

Atque *Profana*, *Professa*, *Profundo*, *Profesta*, *Profari*,

Sic *Procioque*, *Proterva*, *procelloque*. Sed variabis

*Propino*, *Procuro*, *Profundo*, *Propello*, *Propago*.

*Pro* in Greek Words is short, as *Prologus*, *Propheta*; but in Latin Words long, as *Produco*, *Propono*, &c. Except *Pro* in *Pronepos*, &c. which is short.

*Ab*, *Ad*, *Ante*, *De*, *E*, &c.

Finis ubique tenent normas *Ab*, *Ad*, *Ante*, vel *E*, *De*.

The

The Quantities of these Prepositions are known by the Rules for last Syllables, and are also the same in Composition; so *A* in *Ab*, *Ad*; and *E* in *Ante*, are short, according to the Rules for last Syllables, therefore they are short in Composition; as *Abeo*, *Adco*, *Antepono*. *E* and *De* are long, therefore they are so in Composition, as *Educo*, *Deduco*.

*I* and *O* in the End of the former of two Words compounded.

*Pars* si *Componens* fini prior, *I* vel *O*, donat,  
*Sit Breve*; *Cuncti-potens* & *Timo-theus* manifestant.

*I* and *O* in the End of the former of two Words compounded are short; as *I* in *Omni-potens*, *Agri-cola*, *Magui-ficus* *O* in *Timo-theus*, *Hor-die*, *Quando-quidem*, *Utro-bique*.

Except. 1 *Ti* in *Quoti-dianus*, *Quoti-die*, is doubtful. Except. 2 *Bi* in *Ibi-dem*, *Tibi-cen*, *Ubi-que*, and *Ri* in *Meri-dies* are long. Except. 3 *I* in *Idem* in the Masculine is long, in the Neuter short.

*Ultima* cujusque est communis syllaba Versus.

## Of Accent.

*Accent* [ ^ ] is the pronouncing of one Syllable in a Word Louder and Longer than the rest; as *Modesty*, nor *Modēsty*. There are three Rules of Accenting.

1 In Dissyllables the former is still Accented; as *Probus*, *Purus*, *Nemo*.

2 In Polysyllables, if the Penult be long, it is Accented; as *Impūrus*; but if the Penult be short, then the Antepenult is Accented; as *improbus*; Except *sa* in *facis* and *facit*, and the Compounds of *Facio*; and *fit* in Compounds of *Fio*; as *Calefacis*, *Calefacit*, *Satisfit*; not *Cale-facis*, *Cale-facit*, or *Sā-tisfit*.

3 These Particles, *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, always draw the Accent on the last Syllable of the Word to which they are joyned; as *ēgo*, *egōque*, *hābes*, *hābēsque*, *ille*, *illēve*.

## Of Versifying.

A Verse is an orderly Train of Measures, confin'd to a certain Number of Feet.

A Foot is a distinct Motion of two or three Syllables in each Step or Cadence of a Verse.

Dissyllabick Feet are,

*Pyrrichius* v v *Deus*,  
*Spondeus* - - *Essent*.  
*Iambus* v - *Dabunt*.  
*Trocheus* - v *Error*

These of Four Syllables are,

*Proceleusmaticus* v v v v *Celeriter*.  
*Choriambus* - - v v - *Historiæ*;

*Pyrrichius* geminis Brevibus constare videtur.

*Spondeus* Longis gaudet constare duabus

Syllaba Longa Brevis subiecta vocatur *Iambus*.

Quod si longa Brevem præcedat, habeto *Trocheum*.

*Dactylus* efficitur Longa, Brevibusque duabus;

The Trissyllabick are,

*Dactylus* - v v *Scribere*.  
*Anapaestus* v v - *Pietas*.  
*Tribrachys* v v v *Canite*.  
*Molossus* - - - *Magnates*,

*Pedes minus*  
*usitati sunt.*

*Bacchius* v - -

*Epitrius* } - v - -

*Secundus* } - v - -

*Tonicus* } v v - -

a *Minore* } v v - -

At

At geminis fertur Brevibus Longaque *Anapæstus*.  
Tres breviat *Tribrachys*; totidem longatque *Molossus*.  
Vult *Proceleusmaticus* brevibus constare quaternis.  
Longa duæque Breves & Longa creant *Choriambum*.

*Carmen Hexametrum.*

Hexametrum senis Carmen Pedibus fit, & apte  
*Dactylus* est quintus, *Sextam* sibi vult regionem  
*Spondaus*; reliquisque locis sit uterlibet horum.

An *Hexameter* or *Heroick Verse* consists of six Feet, the four first may  
be either a *Dactyl* or *Sponde*, the fifth a *Dactyl*, the sixth a *Sponde*, as,

*Carmina facturus metiri tempora disces.*

*Carmina || factu || rus me || tiri || tempora || disces.*

*Spondaus* *Quintam* nonnunquam vult regionem.

Sometimes we find a *Sponde* in the fifth Place, as,

*Chara Deum soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.*

*Chara De || um sobo || les ma || gnum Jovis || incre || mentum.*

And in this Verse of *Virgil* there seems to be a *Proceleusmatick* in  
the fifth Place, as,

*Ædificant seclaque intexunt abiecte costas.*

The Sense is the same, and no Force upon the Words by reading *Abjete*.

*Carmen Pentametrum.*

*Pentametrum* scandens, pes primus sive secundus,  
*Dactylus* aut *Spondaus* erit; *Cæsura* subibit:  
*Dactylus* hinc duplex, postquam *Cæsura* sequetur.

A *Pentameter Verse* consists of five Feet, either of the two first is a  
*Dactyl* or *Sponde*, then a long Syllable (called *Cæsura*) ending the Word:  
After this two *Dactyls*, with another long Syllable. This last Syllable,  
with the former, evens the Measure; as,

*Omnibus invidas Livide, nemo tibi.*

*Omnibus || invid || as || Livide || nemo ti || bi.*

Or thus, either of the two first a *Dactyl* or *Sponde*, the third a *Sponde*,  
and the two last *Anapæsts*;

*Omnibus || invid || as Li || vide ne || mo tibi.*

When a *Pentameter* is joyned with an *Hexameter*, this makes an *Elegiack*.

*Carmen Sapphicum.*

Quinque Pedes *Sapphus* carmen capit: Esse *Trochaus*  
Vult primus Quartusque & Quintus; Tertius autem  
*Dactylus*: Ipse locum fumes *Spondae* secundum.

A *Sapphick Verse* consists of a *Troche*, a *Sponde*, a *Dactyl*, and two  
*Troches*; as,

*Integer vitæ Scelerisque purus.*

*Inte || ger vi || tæ Scel || risque || purus.*

A Poem of this Sort is composed of three *Sapphicks* and an *Adonick*,  
which consists of a *Dactyl* and a *Sponde*; as *Carmina dicunt*.

*Carmen Asclepiadaum.*

Vult *Asclepiadis Spondaum* versus habere



Principio; binos hinc rite capit *Choriambos*:  
*Pyrrichius* sequitur, quo non velocior alter.

An *Asclepiadeick* Verse consists of a Sponde, two *Choriambos* and a *Pyrrich*; as,

*Mæcenatavis edite Regibus.*

*Mæce* || *nas ata vis* || *edite Re* || *gibus.*

Or an *Asclepiadeick* may consist of a Sponde, *Dactyl*, a long Syllable (called *Cæsura*) and two *Dactyls*; as,

*Mæce* || *nas ata* || *vis* || *edite* || *Regibus.*

*Carmen Phaleucium.*

Cum facies *Carmen*, quod composuisse *Phaleucus*  
 Dicitur, in prima *Spondaus* erit regione;  
*Dactylus* inde datur: Triplicem cui junge *Trochaum*.

A Verse of eleven Syllables (vulgo *Carmen Phaleucium* dictum) consists of a Sponde, a *Dactyl*, and three *Troches*; as,

*Passer deliciae mea puellæ;*

*Passer* || *delici* || *æ me* || *æ pu* || *ellæ.*

## Figures belonging to Verses.

1 *Synalepha*. is the cutting off a Vowel in the End of a Word, when the following Word begins with a Vowel; as,

*Conticuere omnes intentique ora tenebant.*

Sometimes the Vowel is kept in, especially in these Words, *Heu*, *O*; as,

*Et succus pecori & lac subducitur agnis.*

*Heu ubi pacta fides! Ubi quæ Jurare solebas,*

*O Pater O hominum Divumque aterna potestas!*

2 *Eclipsis* is the cutting off *am*, *em*, *im*, *om*, *um*, in the End of a Word, when the following Word begins with a Vowel; as,

*Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam.*

*Synalepha* and *Eclipsis* are sometimes made in the End of a Verse, when the following Verse begins with a Vowel; as,

*Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, Cælumque*

*Adspicit, &c.*

Thus *Cælum* ends the first Verse, and *Quadspicit* begins the second.

*Aut dulcis musti Vulcano decoquit humorem*

*Et foliis, &c.*

Thus *humo* ends the first Verse, and *ret foli* begins the second.

3 *Syneresis* is the Contraction of two Vowels into one Syllable, in the same Word; as in *Cui*, *Huic*, *ii*, *iisdem*, *Dehinc*, *deinde*, *deesse*, &c. as,

*Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones.*

4 *Diæresis* is when one Syllable is divided into two, as, *Syllæ* for *Sylvæ* *Evoluisse*. for *evoluisse*.

5 *Cæsura*, (or a Section) is when there remains a Syllable in the End of a Word, after a Foot is finished; and though the Syllable be short, yet being a *Cæsura* it may be used long; as,

*Pector-*

*Pectoribus inhians spirantia consulit exta.*

The more of these Sections there are in a Verse, the more smoothly will the Measures run; as,

*Sponte su â nume-ros car men veni-ebat ad aptos;  
Quicquid cona-bar dicere, versus e-rat.*

And a Verse runs altogether harsh and rude, where Sections are wanting; as  
*Romæ mœnia terruit impiger Hannibal armis.*

An Hexameter Verse begins with a Trissyllable, and ends with a Diffyllable or Trissyllable.

A Pentameter Verse should end with a Diffyllable, or two Monosyllables. Avoid many Monosyllables, and use Synalapha and Eclipsis as little as may be.

# H O R A T I I

## *Genera Carminum.*

### Genus I.

- l - v v - l - v v - l v v

### Genus II.

- v l - - l - v v l - v l - v

- v l - - l - v v l - v l - v

- v l - - l - v v l - v l - v

, v v l - -

### Genus III.

- l - v v - l v v

- l - v v - l - v v - l v v

### Genus IV.

- v v l - v v l - - l - v v l - v l - v

- v l - v l - l - v l - v l - v

### Genus V.

- l - v v - l - v v - l v v

- l - v v - l - v v - l v v

- l - v v l - -

- l - v v - l v v

## Genus VI.

- . l . v v - l . v v - l v v  
 - . l . v v - l . v v - l v v  
 - . l . v v - l . v v - l v v  
 - . l . v v - l v v

## Genus VII.

- . l . v v l - . l . v v l - v v l - -  
 - v v l - v v l - v v l - - (1)

(1) The first Verse is *Hexameter*, the second consists of the four last Feet of an *Hexameter*.

## Genus VIII.

- v v - l . v - -  
 - v - - l . v v - l . v v - l v - -

## Genus IX.

v - l v - l . l - v v l - v v (2)  
 v - l v - l . l - v v l - v v  
 - - l v - l - - l v - l v  
 - v v l - v v l - v l - -

(2) The first Foot of the two first Verses, and the first and third of the third Verse is *Fambus* or *Spondeus*, according to the Quantity.

## Genus X.

- . l . v v - l . v v - l . v v - l v v (3)

(3) The last Foot *Pyrrichius*, or *Fambus*.

## Genus XI.

- v l . v l - v l v  
 v - l v - l v - l v - l v - l v

## Genus XII.

v v - - l v v - - l v v - -  
 v v - - l v v - - l v v - -  
 v v - - l v v - - l v v - - l v v - -

## Genus XIII.

- . l . v v l - v v l - - l . v v l - - (4)  
 - v v l - v v l - -

(4) The first Verse is *Hexameter* or *Heroic*.

Genus



Genus XIV.

— l v — l — — l v — l v — l v v (5)  
v — l v — l — — l v v

(5) The first third and fifth Foot of the first Verse, and the first and third of the second is *Jambus* or *Spondæus* according to the Quantity.

Genus XV.

— l v — l — — l v — l v — l v v (6)  
— v v l — v v l —  
v — l v — l — — l v v

(6) The first Verse admits of *Spondæus* or *Jambus* in the first, third and fifth Foot.

Genus XVI.

— v v l — — l — — l — — l — v v l — — (7)  
v — l v — l — — l v v  
— v v l — v v l —

(7) The first Verse is *Hexameter*, or *Heroic*.

Genus XVII.

— v v l — v v l — — l — — l — v v l — — (8)  
— — l v — l — — l v v

(8) The first Verse is *Hexameter*, or *Heroic*.

Genus XVIII.

— v v l — v v l — — l — — l — v v l — — (9)  
v — l v — l v — l v — l v — l v v

(9) The first Verse is *Hexameter*.

Genus XIX.

— — l v — l — — l v — l — — l v — (10)

(10) The first, third and fifth Foot is *Spondæus* or *Jambus*, according to the Quantity.

# The TABLE.

| Lib. I. |    | 26       | 9 | 12        | 6  | 16       | 6  | 10         | 10 |
|---------|----|----------|---|-----------|----|----------|----|------------|----|
|         |    | 27       | 9 | 13        | 9  | 17       | 9  | 11         | 2  |
| 1       | 1  | 28       | 7 | 14        | 9  | 18       | 2  | 12         | 6  |
| 2       | 2  | 29       | 9 | 15        | 9  | 19       | 3  | 13         | 5  |
| 3       | 3  | 30       | 2 | 16        | 2  | 20       | 2  | 14         | 9  |
| 4       | 4  | 31       | 9 | 17        | 9  | 21       | 9  | 15         | 9  |
| 5       | 5  | 32       | 2 | 18        | 11 | 22       | 2  |            |    |
| 6       | 6  | 33       | 6 | 19        | 9  | 23       | 9  | L. Epodon. |    |
| 7       | 7  | 34       | 9 | 20        | 9  | 24       | 3  |            |    |
| 8       | 8  | 35       | 9 |           |    | 25       | 3  | 1          | 14 |
| 9       | 9  | 36       | 3 | Lib. III. |    | 26       | 9  | 2          | 14 |
| 10      | 2  | 37       | 9 |           |    | 27       | 2  | 3          | 14 |
| 11      | 10 | 38       | 2 | 1         | 9  | 28       | 3  | 4          | 14 |
| 12      | 2  |          |   | 2         | 9  | 29       | 9  | 5          | 14 |
| 13      | 3  | Lib. II. | 3 |           | 9  | 30       | 1  | 6          | 14 |
| 14      | 5  |          | 4 |           | 9  |          |    | 7          | 14 |
| 15      | 6  | 1        | 9 | 5         | 9  | Lib. IV. |    | 8          | 14 |
| 16      | 9  | 2        | 2 | 6         | 9  |          |    | 9          | 14 |
| 17      | 9  | 3        | 9 | 7         | 5  | 1        | 13 | 10         | 14 |
| 18      | 10 | 4        | 2 | 8         | 2  | 2        | 2  | 11         | 14 |
| 19      | 3  | 5        | 9 | 9         | 3  | 3        | 3  | 12         | 14 |
| 20      | 2  | 6        | 2 | 10        | 6  | 4        | 9  | 13         | 16 |
| 21      | 5  | 7        | 9 | 11        | 2  | 5        | 6  | 14         | 14 |
| 22      | 2  | 8        | 2 | 12        | 11 | 6        | 2  | 15         | 14 |
| 23      | 5  | 9        | 9 | 13        | 6  | 7        | 13 | 16         | 18 |
| 24      | 6  | 10       | 2 | 14        | 2  | 8        | 1  | 17         | 19 |
| 25      | 2  | 11       | 9 | 15        | 3  | 9        | 9  |            |    |

## The Explanation of the TABLE.

**T**HIS Table contains *Horace's* Four Books of *Odes*, and that of his *Epodes*. The Figures in the first Row shew the Number of the *Ode* or *Epode*; and those in the second direct to the *Genus Carminis*. E. G. To know how to Scanse the 10 *Ode* of the first Book, seek Number 10 in the first Row, and opposite to that in the second Row, you'll find Number 2, which directs you to the second *Genus Carminis* forgoing: And there observe, that four Lines make up the compleat Stanza. The first Three are the same Kind of Verse, and have, each of them, five Measures (or Feet.) The Fourth is a different Kind of Verse, and consists only of two Measures.

The

# The Examples of Etymology translated into English.

## Examples of the Rules of Genders.

|                       |                  |                              |                       |                     |                                     |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Jupiter,</i>       | Heathen          | <i>Nil.</i>                  | Nothing.              | <i>Rubus,</i>       | a Bramble Bush.                     |
| <i>Mars,</i>          | Gods.            | <i>Nihil.</i>                |                       | <i>Cupressus,</i>   | a Cypress Tree.                     |
| <i>Gabriel,</i>       | an Angel's Name. | <i>Fas,</i>                  | Lawful.               | <i>Ossa,</i>        | the Name of a Mountain in Thessaly. |
| <i>Lucifer,</i>       | the Devil.       | <i>Nefas,</i>                | Unlawful.             | <i>Mons,</i>        | a Mountain.                         |
| <i>Carolus,</i>       | Charles.         | <i>Manna,</i>                | heavenly Food.        | <i>Hadria,</i>      | the Hadriatick Sea.                 |
| <i>Jacobus,</i>       | James.           | <i>Mammona,</i>              | Riches.               | <i>Sinus,</i>       | a Gulph of the Sea.                 |
| <i>Rex,</i>           | a King.          | <i>Hir,</i>                  | the Palm of the Hand. | <i>Adamas,</i>      | an Adamant Stone.                   |
| <i>Scriba,</i>        | a Writer.        | <i>Pondo,</i>                | a pound Weight.       | <i>Lapis,</i>       | a Stone.                            |
| <i>Equus,</i>         | a Horse.         | <i>Magnum A,</i>             | a Capital A.          | <i>Agragas,</i>     | a Mountain in Sicily.               |
| <i>Leo,</i>           | a Lyon.          | <i>Nigrum T,</i>             | the black Letter T.   | <i>Eunuchus,</i>    | the Name of a Comedy.               |
| <i>Juno,</i>          | Heathen          | <i>Gummi,</i>                | Gum.                  | <i>Comædia,</i>     | a Comedy.                           |
| <i>Pallas,</i>        | Goddesses.       | <i>Scire tuum,</i>           | thy Knowledge.        | <i>Cometa,</i>      | a Comet.                            |
| <i>Catharina,</i>     | Catharine.       | <i>Velle suum,</i>           | his own Inclination.  | <i>Cometes,</i>     | a Comet.                            |
| <i>Maria,</i>         | Mary.            | <i>Gras aliud,</i>           | another Day.          | <i>Planeta,</i>     | a Planet.                           |
| <i>Regina,</i>        | a Queen.         | <i>Lux est monosyllabum,</i> |                       | <i>Planetes,</i>    | a Planet.                           |
| <i>Soror,</i>         | a Sister.        | <i>Lux is a Monosyllable</i> |                       | <i>Magnet,</i>      | a Load Stone.                       |
| <i>Equa,</i>          | a Mare.          | <i>Amo est verbum,</i>       | Amo is a Verb.        | <i>Lebes,</i>       | a Caldron.                          |
| <i>Leona,</i>         | a Lyonsess.      | <i>Garumna,</i>              | the River Garrone.    | <i>Tyrannis,</i>    | Tyranny.                            |
| <i>Parents,</i>       | a Parent.        | <i>Tybris,</i>               | the River Tiber.      | <i>Arbos,</i>       | a Tree.                             |
| <i>Civis,</i>         | a Citizen.       | <i>Boreas,</i>               | the North Wind.       | <i>Arbor,</i>       |                                     |
| <i>Canis,</i>         | a Dog or Bitch.  | <i>Aquilo,</i>               | the East Wind.        | <i>Labos,</i>       | Labour.                             |
| <i>Comes,</i>         | a Companion.     | <i>Eurus,</i>                | the East Wind.        | <i>Labor,</i>       |                                     |
| <i>Glis,</i>          | a Rat.           | <i>Cyprus,</i>               | the Isle Cyprus.      | <i>Diphthongos,</i> | a Diphthong.                        |
| <i>Vermis,</i>        | a Worm.          | <i>Britannia,</i>            | Britain.              | <i>Diphthongus,</i> |                                     |
| <i>Phoenix,</i>       | a Bird's Name.   | <i>Corinthus,</i>            | Corinth.              | <i>Synodos,</i>     | a Synod.                            |
| <i>Vultur,</i>        | a Vulture.       | <i>Lutetia,</i>              | Paris.                | <i>Synodus,</i>     |                                     |
| <i>Turtur,</i>        | a Turtle.        | <i>Malus,</i>                | an Apple Tree.        | <i>Penna,</i>       | a Pen.                              |
| <i>Mus,</i>           | a Mouse.         | <i>Pyrus,</i>                | a Pear Tree.          | <i>Thema,</i>       | a Theme.                            |
| <i>Lepus,</i>         | a Hare.          | <i>Ægyptus,</i>              | Ægypt.                | <i>Grammatica,</i>  | a Grammar.                          |
| <i>Elephas,</i>       | an Elephant.     | <i>Scotia,</i>               | Scotland.             | <i>Sedile,</i>      | a Seat.                             |
| <i>Piscis,</i>        | a Fish.          | <i>Præneste,</i>             | Names of Cities.      | <i>Caro,</i>        | Flesh.                              |
| <i>Bombyx,</i>        | a Silk-worm.     | <i>Sulmo,</i>                |                       | <i>Harpago,</i>     | a Cleek.                            |
| <i>Salar,</i>         | a young Salmon.  | <i>Tibur,</i>                |                       | <i>Tendo,</i>       | a Ligature.                         |
| <i>Passer,</i>        | a Sparrow.       | <i>Londinum,</i>             | London.               | <i>Ordo,</i>        | an Order.                           |
| <i>Aquila,</i>        | an Eagle.        | <i>Robur,</i>                | an Oak.               | <i>Ligo,</i>        | a Spade.                            |
| <i>Mas passer,</i>    | the Sparrow.     | <i>Acer,</i>                 | a Mapple Tree.        | <i>Cardo,</i>       | the Hinge of a Door.                |
| <i>Fœmina passer,</i> | the Sparrow.     | <i>Suber,</i>                | a Cork Tree.          | <i>Margo,</i>       | a Margin.                           |
| <i>Corvus niger,</i>  | a black Raven.   | <i>Siler,</i>                | a Willow Tree.        | <i>Sermo,</i>       | a Discourse.                        |
| <i>Aquila fulva,</i>  | a brown Eagle.   | <i>Thus,</i>                 | a Frankincense Tree.  | <i>Dictio,</i>      | a Word.                             |
| <i>Mancipium,</i>     | a Slave.         | <i>Oleaster,</i>             | a wild Olive.         | <i>Lectio,</i>      | a Lesson.                           |
| <i>Scortum,</i>       | a Whore.         | <i>Spinus,</i>               | a Thorn.              | <i>Positio,</i>     | a Situation.                        |
| <i>Templum,</i>       | a Church.        | <i>Libanus,</i>              | a Frankincense Tree.  | <i>Formido,</i>     | Fear.                               |
|                       |                  |                              |                       | <i>Imago,</i>       | Image.                              |



|                        |                  |                    |                    |                       |                  |                |  |
|------------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|--|
| <i>Imago,</i>          | an Image.        | <i>Poples,</i>     | the Hough.         | <i>Finis,</i>         | the End.         | <i>Fraus,</i>  |  |
| <i>Sal,</i>            | Salt.            | <i>Ames,</i>       | a Fowler's Staff.  | <i>Clunis,</i>        | the Buttock.     | <i>Servit</i>  |  |
| <i>Sol,</i>            | the Sun.         | <i>Pes,</i>        | the Foot.          | <i>Corbis,</i>        | a Basket.        | <i>Juvent</i>  |  |
| <i>Genu,</i>           | the Knee.        | <i>Paries,</i>     | a Wall.            | <i>Canalis,</i>       | a Conduit-pipe.  | <i>Incus,</i>  |  |
| <i>Lac,</i>            | Milk.            | <i>Merges,</i>     | a sheaf of Corn.   | <i>Torquis,</i>       | a Chain.         | <i>Tellus,</i> |  |
| <i>Quid,</i>           | What.            | <i>Palmes,</i>     | a Vine Branch.     | <i>Pulvis,</i>        | Dust.            | <i>Tempus,</i> |  |
| <i>Mel,</i>            | Honey.           | <i>Limes,</i>      | a Limit.           | <i>Cinis,</i>         | Ashes.           | <i>Corpus,</i> |  |
| <i>Caput,</i>          | the Head.        | <i>Stripes,</i>    | a Stake.           | <i>Ammis,</i>         | a River.         | <i>Tripus</i>  |  |
| <i>Gluten,</i>         | Glew.            | <i>Fomes,</i>      | Nourishment.       | <i>Octuffis,</i>      | the Value of     |                |  |
| <i>Inguen,</i>         | the Groin.       | <i>Trames,</i>     | a Cross-way.       |                       | Eight Asles.     | <i>Pons,</i>   |  |
| <i>Unguen,</i>         | Ointment.        | <i>Termes,</i>     | an Imp of a        | <i>Decussis,</i>      | the Value of     | <i>Fons,</i>   |  |
| <i>Syndon,</i>         | Linnen.          |                    | Tree.              |                       | Ten Asles.       | <i>Torren</i>  |  |
| <i>Icon,</i>           | an Image.        | <i>Gurges,</i>     | a Whirlpool.       | <i>Cos,</i>           | a Whet-stone.    | <i>Mons,</i>   |  |
| <i>Pæan,</i>           | a Song in praise | <i>Celtes,</i>     | a Turf.            | <i>Dos,</i>           | Tocher-good.     | <i>Dens,</i>   |  |
|                        | of Apollo.       | <i>Dies,</i>       | a Day.             | <i>Arbos,</i>         | a Tree.          | <i>Chalyb</i>  |  |
| <i>Delphin,</i>        | a Kind of Fish   | <i>Hippomanes,</i> | a poyson.          | <i>Epos,</i>          | a Kind of Song.  | <i>Frons</i>   |  |
|                        | a Dolphin.       |                    | ous Herb.          | <i>Chaos,</i>         | a confused Mafs. |                |  |
| <i>Canon,</i>          | a Rule.          | <i>Æs,</i>         | Bras or Money.     | <i>Melos,</i>         | Melody.          | <i>Frons</i>   |  |
| <i>Carmen,</i>         | a Verse.         | <i>Cacoethes,</i>  | an ill Custom.     | <i>Os oris,</i>       | the Mouth.       |                |  |
| <i>Flumen,</i>         | a River.         | <i>Nubes,</i>      | a Cloud.           | <i>Os ossis,</i>      | a Bone.          | <i>Scrobs</i>  |  |
| <i>Gymnasion,</i>      | a College.       | <i>Sedes,</i>      | a Seat.            | <i>Flos</i>           | a Flower.        | <i>Stirps</i>  |  |
| <i>Furfur,</i>         | Bran.            | <i>Meridies,</i>   | Mid-day.           | <i>Mos,</i>           | a Custom.        |                |  |
| <i>Calcar,</i>         | a Spur.          | <i>Vis,</i>        | Strength.          | <i>Vannus,</i>        | a Corn Fan.      | <i>Stirps</i>  |  |
| <i>Guttur,</i>         | the Throat.      | <i>Pollis,</i>     | fine Flower.       | <i>Humus,</i>         | the Ground.      | <i>Addep</i>   |  |
| <i>Cucumer,</i>        | a Cucumber.      | <i>Axis,</i>       | an Axle-tree.      | <i>Domus,</i>         | an House.        | <i>Trabs</i>   |  |
| <i>Uber,</i>           | a Pap.           | <i>Callis,</i>     | a path Way.        | <i>Alvus,</i>         | the Womb.        |                |  |
| <i>Iter,</i>           | a Journey.       | <i>Sotularis,</i>  | a Kind of          | <i>Acus eris,</i>     | Chaff.           | <i>Puls,</i>   |  |
| <i>Verber,</i>         | a Whip.          |                    | Shoe.              | <i>Acus us, f.</i>    | a Needle.        | <i>Pars,</i>   |  |
| <i>Cadaver,</i>        | a Carrion.       | <i>Acinacis,</i>   | a Shable.          | <i>Acus i, m.</i>     | a Kind of        | <i>Quadr</i>   |  |
| <i>Ver,</i>            | the Spring.      | <i>Orbis,</i>      | a Circle.          |                       | Fish.            |                |  |
| <i>Spinter,</i>        | a Clasp.         | <i>Cenchrus,</i>   | a venomous         | <i>Porticus,</i>      | a Gallery.       | <i>Sexta</i>   |  |
| <i>Tuber, m. or n.</i> | Swelling.        |                    | Serpent.           | <i>Tribus,</i>        | a Tribe.         |                |  |
| <i>Tuber, f.</i>       | a Kind of        | <i>Vectis,</i>     | a Bar.             | <i>Colus,</i>         | a Distaff.       | <i>Hydro</i>   |  |
|                        | Tree.            | <i>Pestis,</i>     | a Beam.            | <i>Manus,</i>         | the Hand.        | <i>Forma</i>   |  |
| <i>Tuber, m.</i>       | a Kind of        | <i>Sanguis,</i>    | Blood.             | <i>Ficus i, m.</i>    | the Emere-       | <i>Simila</i>  |  |
|                        | Apple.           | <i>Fascis,</i>     | a Faggot.          |                       | rods.            | <i>Forse</i>   |  |
| <i>Linter,</i>         | a little Boat.   | <i>Fustis,</i>     | a Batron.          | <i>Ficus us, f.</i>   | a Fig.           |                |  |
| <i>Liber,</i>          | a Book.          | <i>Mensis,</i>     | a Month.           | <i>Grossus,</i>       | an unripe Fig.   | <i>Carex</i>   |  |
| <i>Papaver,</i>        | Poppy.           | <i>Collis,</i>     | a little Hill.     | <i>Specus,</i>        | a Den.           | <i>Supel</i>   |  |
| <i>Piper,</i>          | Pepper.          | <i>Caulis,</i>     | a Stalk.           | <i>Penus,</i>         | a Store house.   |                |  |
| <i>Zinziber,</i>       | Ginger.          | <i>Follis,</i>     | a pair of Bellows. | <i>Phaselus,</i>      | a Galley.        | <i>Forma</i>   |  |
| <i>Cor,</i>            | the Heart.       | <i>Cassis, m.</i>  | a Net.             | <i>Vulgus,</i>        | the Rabble.      | <i>Vari</i>    |  |
| <i>Marmor,</i>         | a Marble.        | <i>Cassis, f.</i>  | a Helmet.          | <i>Virus,</i>         | Poyson.          | <i>Mast</i>    |  |
|                        | Stone.           | <i>Torris,</i>     | a Fire-brand.      | <i>Pelagus,</i>       | the Sea.         | <i>Calix</i>   |  |
| <i>Æquor,</i>          | the Sea.         | <i>Lapis,</i>      | a Stone.           | <i>Ventus,</i>        | the Wind.        | <i>Calyx</i>   |  |
| <i>Timor,</i>          | Fear.            | <i>Unguis,</i>     | the Nail of a      | <i>Fructus,</i>       | Fruit.           |                |  |
| <i>Var, Vasis,</i>     | a Vessel.        |                    | Finger.            | <i>Pecus oris, n.</i> | a Flock.         | <i>Grex</i>    |  |
| <i>Vas, Vadis,</i>     | a Cautioner.     | <i>Aqualis,</i>    | a Water-pot.       | <i>Pecus udis, f.</i> | Cattle.          | <i>Eryx</i>    |  |
| <i>As assis,</i>       | Half-penny       | <i>Ensis,</i>      | a Sword.           | <i>Subscus,</i>       | a Wedge.         | <i>Sand</i>    |  |
|                        | Farthing.        | <i>Cucumis,</i>    | a Cucumber.        | <i>Palus,</i>         | a Mire.          | <i>Spad</i>    |  |
| <i>Tiaras,</i>         | an Ornament      | <i>Vomis,</i>      | the Sock of a      | <i>Senectus,</i>      | old Age.         | <i>Corte</i>   |  |
|                        | for the Head.    |                    | Plough.            | <i>Laus,</i>          | Praise.          |                |  |
| <i>Pietas,</i>         | Godliness.       | <i>Affis,</i>      | a Shilling.        | <i>Salus,</i>         | Safety.          | <i>Ony</i>     |  |
| <i>Tudes,</i>          | an Hammer.       | <i>Panis,</i>      | Bread.             | <i>Virtus,</i>        | Virtue.          | <i>Sile</i>    |  |
|                        |                  |                    |                    |                       | <i>Fraus,</i>    | <i>Imbi</i>    |  |

|                          |                |                 |                 |                     |               |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>Fraus</i> ,           | Deceit.        | <i>Calx</i> ,   | the Heel.       | <i>Filia</i> ,      | a Daughter.   |
| <i>Servitus</i> ,        | Bondage.       | <i>Ramex</i> ,  | a Rupture.      | <i>Mula</i> ,       | a Mule.       |
| <i>Juventus</i> ,        | Youth.         | <i>Pumex</i> ,  | a Pumice-stone. | <i>Duo, a, o</i> ,  | Two.          |
| <i>Incus</i> , a Smith's | Stithy.        | <i>Obex</i> ,   | a Bar.          | <i>Liberta</i> ,    | a free Woman. |
| <i>Tellus</i> ,          | the Earth.     | <i>Pax</i> ,    | Peace.          | <i>Equa</i> ,       | a Mare.       |
| <i>Tempus</i> ,          | Time.          | <i>Lex</i> ,    | a Law.          | <i>Nata</i> ,       | a Daughter.   |
| <i>Corpus</i> ,          | the Body.      | <i>Vox</i> ,    | a Word.         | <i>Dea</i> ,        | a Goddeſs.    |
| <i>Tripus</i> ,          | a three footed | <i>Thorax</i> , | a Breast-plate. | <i>Ambo, a, o</i> , | Both.         |
|                          | Stool.         | <i>Pollex</i> , | the Thumb.      |                     |               |

|                    |               |                   |                |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Pons</i> ,      | a Bridge.     | <i>Septunx</i> ,  | Seven Ounces.  |
| <i>Fons</i> ,      | a Well.       | <i>Deunx</i> ,    | Eleven Ounces. |
| <i>Torrens</i> ,   | a Land-speat. | <i>Sardonyx</i> , | a precious     |
| <i>Mons</i> ,      | a Mountain.   |                   | Stone.         |
| <i>Dens</i> ,      | a Tooth.      | <i>Arma</i> ,     | Arms.          |
| <i>Chalybs</i> ,   | Steel.        | <i>Cancelli</i> , | the Latesses.  |
| <i>Frons tis</i> , | m. or f. the  | <i>Nugæ</i> ,     | Trifles.       |
|                    | Forehead.     | <i>Felix</i> ,    | Happy.         |
| <i>Frons dis</i> , | f. the Leaf   | <i>Fortis</i> ,   | Strong.        |
|                    | of a Tree.    | <i>Bonus</i> ,    | Good.          |
| <i>Scrobs</i> ,    | a Ditch.      | <i>Frugi</i> ,    | Thrifty.       |

The second Declension.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Synodus</i> ,          | a Synod.                         |
| <i>Gener</i> ,            | a Son in Law.                    |
| <i>Prosper</i> ,          | Prosperous.                      |
| <i>Puer</i> ,             | a Boy.                           |
| <i>Asper</i> ,            | Bitter.                          |
| <i>Adulter</i> ,          | an Adulterer.                    |
| <i>Presbyter</i> ,        | a Minister.                      |
| <i>Tener, a, um</i> ,     | Tender.                          |
| <i>Miser, a, um</i> ,     | Miserable.                       |
| <i>Exter, a, um</i> ,     | Foreign.                         |
| <i>Gibber, m</i> ,        | a Swelling.                      |
| <i>Gibber, a, um</i> ,    | Crook-backed.                    |
| <i>Iber</i> ,             | a Spaniard.                      |
| <i>Lacer, a, um</i> ,     | Torn.                            |
| <i>Socer</i> ,            | a Father in Law.                 |
| <i>Liger</i> ,            | a Man's Name.                    |
| <i>Dexter, a, um</i> ,    | Right.                           |
| <i>Vir</i> ,              | a Man.                           |
| <i>Satur, a, um</i> ,     | Full.                            |
| <i>Laniger, a, um</i> ,   | Bearing Wool.                    |
| <i>Furcifer</i> ,         | a Villain.                       |
| <i>Unus, a, um</i> ,      | One.                             |
| <i>Uter, a, um</i> ,      | Which.                           |
| <i>Neuter, a, um</i> ,    | Neither.                         |
| <i>Solus, a, um</i> ,     | Alone.                           |
| <i>Ullus, a, um</i> ,     | Any.                             |
| <i>Alter, a, um</i> ,     | the One.                         |
| <i>Alius, a, ud</i> ,     | Another.                         |
| <i>Totus, a, um</i> ,     | Whole.                           |
| <i>Nulli cuncti sum</i> , | I have no Counsel.               |
| <i>Androgeos</i> ,        | a Grecian Captain.               |
| <i>Saturnalia</i> ,       | Feasts kept in Honour of Saturn. |
| <i>Vulcanalia</i> ,       | Feasts kept in Honour of Vulcan. |
|                           | <i>Orpheus</i> ,                 |

DECLENSIONS.

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Pomum</i> ,     | an Apple.        |
| <i>Filius</i> ,    | a Son.           |
| <i>DEUS</i> ,      | GOD.             |
| <i>Meus</i> ,      | Mine.            |
| <i>Fluvius</i> ,   | a River.         |
| <i>Populus, m.</i> | a People.        |
| <i>Populus, f.</i> | the Poplar Tree. |
| <i>Chorus</i> ,    | a Consort.       |
| <i>Agnus</i> ,     | a Lamb.          |
| <i>Pecunia</i> ,   | Money.           |
| <i>Liber</i> ,     | a Book.          |
| <i>Thomas</i> ,    | } Names of Men.  |
| <i>Theseus</i> ,   |                  |
| <i>Pallas</i> ,    | } Virgil.        |
| <i>Virgilius</i> , |                  |
| <i>Ventus</i> ,    | the Wind.        |

The First Declension.

|                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Penna</i> ,      | a Pen.          |
| <i>Anchises</i> ,   | a Man's Name.   |
| <i>Pentecoste</i> , | Whitfunday.     |
| <i>Circe</i> ,      | a Woman's Name. |
| <i>Familia</i> ,    | a Family.       |
| <i>Anta</i> ,       | an Hall.        |

*Orpheus*, the Name of  
a Grecian.  
*Tydeus*, a man's Name.

Tuba, a Trumpet  
Cano, I sing.  
Far, any Kind of Corn.  
Hepar } the Liver.  
Hepar }

*Pes,* the Foot.  
*Hæres,* an Heir.  
*Merces,* a Reward.  
*Ceres,* the Goddess of Corn.

### The Third Declension.

*Paris,* a Man's Name.  
*Dido,* a Woman's Name.

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| Acer, is, e, | Sharp.        |
| Alacer,      | Cheerful.     |
| Imber,       | a Shower.     |
| Saluber,     | Wholesome.    |
| Celeber,     | Famous.       |
| Pater,       | a Father.     |
| Mater,       | a Mother.     |
| Later,       | a Tile Stone. |
| Cor,         | the Heart.    |

Poples the Hough.  
 Prafes, a President.  
 Cuspis the Point.  
 Lapis, a Stone.  
 Caffis, ffis, a Net.  
 Caffis, idis, a Helmet.  
 Glis, ris, m. or f. a Rat.  
 Glis, dis, f. Mouldinets  
 in Bread

Virgo, a Virgin  
Ordo, Order.  
Margo, the Margin.  
Cardo, a Door crook.  
Apollo, the God of Wisdom

|               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| <i>Iter,</i>  | a Journey. |
| <i>Robur,</i> | Strength.  |
| <i>Jecur,</i> | the Liver. |
| <i>Femur,</i> | the Thigh. |
| <i>Ebur,</i>  | Ivory.     |

*Glis, tis*, f. Potter's Clay.  
*Glis, tis*, f. a Thistle.  
*Navis*, a Ship.  
*Omnis, is, e*, All.  
*Paris*, a Man's Name.

*Cupido*, m. the God of Love.  
*Cupido*. f. Desire.  
*Turbo*, a Whirl-wind.  
*Homo*. a Man or Wo-

Calcar, a Spur  
September, September  
Fraser, a Brother  
Mas, the Male  
As, an Half-penny farthing

*Herefis,* Herefy.  
*Erynny,* one of the Furies of Hell.  
*Chlamys,* a short Cloak.  
*Simois,* a River running by Troy.

*Nemo,* No Body.  
*Unedo,* the Fruit of the Crab-tree.

*Vas, dis,* a Cautioner.  
*Vas, sis,* a Vessel.  
*Pietas,* Godliness.

*Delphis,* } a Dolphin.  
*Delphin,* }  
*Pulvis,* } Dust.

*Anio*, a River in *Italy*.  
*Nerio*, a Woman's Name  
*Caro*, *Flesh*.

*Adamas*, an Adamant  
*Elephas*, an Elephant  
*Gigas*, a Giant

*Cucumis*, or *er*, a Cu-  
cumber.  
*Cinis*, or *er*, Ashes.

*Sermo,* a Discourse.  
*Formido,* Fear.  
*Caligo,* Darkness.

*Pallas*, the Goddess of Wisdom  
*Arcas*, an Arcadian

*Vomis*, or *er*, a Plough  
Share.  
*Pollis*, or *en*, fine Flower

*Lac,*  
*Mel,*  
*Fel,*

|                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| <i>Quies,</i>    | Rest    |
| <i>Locuples,</i> | Rich    |
| <i>Teges,</i>    | a Cover |

*Sanguis, or* Blood.  
*Dis,* Rich.  
*Lis,* Strife.

*Melchisedec,* a Man's Name.  
*Halec,* a Herring.

Seget, growing Corn.  
Interpres, an Interpreter  
Præpes, nimble in

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| <i>Samnis,</i> | a Sarnnitan.  |
| <i>Quiris,</i> | a Roman.      |
| <i>Charis,</i> | Pleasantness. |

David, a Man's Name.  
Pecten, a Comb.  
Flamen, m. a Priest

*Paries,* Flying  
*Abies,* a Wall  
a Fir Tree

*Semis*, the Half of a Shilling.  
*Glos*, the Husband's Sister.

*Flamen*, n. a Blast of Wind.  
*Titan*, a Heathen God.

Indiges, a Canonized Saint  
Aries, a Ram

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| Mos,  | a Custom. |
| Flor, | a Flower. |
| Ros,  | Dew.      |

*Demophoon*, a Man's Name.  
*Memnon*, a Man's Name

Perpes, Continual  
Teres, Long and Round  
Hebes, Dull

Carbos vel or, a Tree.  
Honos vel or, Honour.  
Os oris, the Mouth.  
Q. T. Bone.

*Helicon*, the Name of  
a Mountain.  
*Carmen*, a Verse.

*Sedes,* a Seat  
*Lebes,* a Cauldron  
*Tapes,* Tapestry  
*H. G.*

*Os offis,* a Bone.  
*Bos,* an Ox or Cow.  
*Custos,* a Keeper.  
*Th*

*Tubicen,* a Trumpeter.  
*Tibicen,* a Piper.  
*Tibia,* a Pipe.

|                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| <i>Holpes,</i> | a Guest |
| <i>Verres,</i> | a Boar  |
| <i>Vates,</i>  | a Poet  |

*Minos*, a certain King.



|                        |                                    |                     |                                                                   |                    |                                 |  |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>Heros</i> ,         | a Hero.                            | <i>Stips</i> ,      | a Penny.                                                          | <i>Astyanax</i> ,  | Hector's Son.                   |  |
| <i>Tros</i> ,          | a Trojan.                          | <i>Calebs</i> ,     | Unmarried.                                                        | <i>Paan</i> ,      | a Kind of Song.                 |  |
| <i>Cos</i> ,           | a Whet-Stone.                      | <i>Municeps</i> ,   | a Burgefs.                                                        | <i>Lampas</i> ,    | a Lamp.                         |  |
| <i>Labos vel or</i> ,  | Labour.                            | <i>Glands</i> ,     | an Acorn.                                                         | <i>Vis</i> ,       | Strength.                       |  |
| <i>Lepos vel or</i> ,  | Pleasant-<br>ness of Speech.       | <i>Nefrens</i> ,    | a Pig.                                                            | <i>Cucumis</i> ,   | a Cucumber.                     |  |
| <i>Odos vel or</i> ,   | a Smell.                           | <i>Lens dis</i> ,   | a Nit.                                                            | <i>Ravis</i> ,     | Hoarsness.                      |  |
| <i>Vapos vel or</i> ,  | Vapour.                            | <i>Lens tis</i> ,   | a Kind of Puls.                                                   | <i>Tuffis</i> ,    | the Cough.                      |  |
| <i>Hulcus</i> ,        | an Ulcer.                          | <i>Frons dis</i> ,  | the Leaf of a<br>Tree.                                            | <i>Sitis</i> ,     | Thirst.                         |  |
| <i>Olus</i> ,          | Kail.                              | <i>Fronstis</i> ,   | the Fore-head.                                                    | <i>Genesis</i> ,   | a Generation.                   |  |
| <i>Vellus</i> ,        | a Fleece.                          | <i>Libripens</i> ,  | a Weight.                                                         | <i>Chelys</i> ,    | a Tortoise.                     |  |
| <i>Venus</i> ,         | the Goddess of<br>Beauty.          | <i>Concors</i> ,    | Agreeing.                                                         | <i>Buris</i> ,     | the Stilt of a<br>Plough.       |  |
| <i>Genus</i> ,         | a Kindred.                         | <i>Discors</i> ,    | Disagreeing.                                                      | <i>Pelvis</i> ,    | a Bafon.                        |  |
| <i>Viscus</i> ,        | Glew.                              | <i>Quiens</i> ,     | Able.                                                             | <i>Clavis</i> ,    | a Key.                          |  |
| <i>Acus</i> ,          | Chaff.                             | <i>Iens</i> ,       | Going.                                                            | <i>Securis</i> ,   | an Ax.                          |  |
| <i>Fædus</i> ,         | a Covenant.                        | <i>Ambire</i> ,     | to go.                                                            | <i>Puppis</i> ,    | the Hinder<br>Part of the Ship. |  |
| <i>Scelus</i> ,        | Wickedness.                        | <i>Mons</i> ,       | a Hill.                                                           | <i>Turris</i> ,    | a Tower.                        |  |
| <i>Pondus</i> ,        | a Weight.                          | <i>Ar</i> ,         | Art.                                                              | <i>Restis</i> ,    | a Cord.                         |  |
| <i>Vulnus</i> ,        | a Wound.                           | <i>Misericors</i> , | Merciful.                                                         | <i>Febris</i> ,    | the Fever.                      |  |
| <i>Munus</i> ,         | an Office.                         | <i>Vecors</i> ,     | Mad.                                                              | <i>Aqualis</i> ,   | a Water-pot.                    |  |
| <i>Onus</i> ,          | a Burden.                          | <i>Abiens</i> ,     | Departing.                                                        | <i>Pestis</i> ,    | the Plague.                     |  |
| <i>Sydus</i> ,         | a Star.                            | <i>Ambiens</i> ,    | going about.                                                      | <i>Navis</i> ,     | a Ship.                         |  |
| <i>Latus</i> ,         | the Side.                          | <i>Occiput</i> ,    | the Hinder<br>Part of the Head.                                   | <i>Torquis</i> ,   | a Chain.                        |  |
| <i>Opus eris</i> ,     | a Work.                            | <i>Sinciput</i> ,   | the Fore Part<br>of the Head.                                     | <i>Bipennis</i> ,  | is, e, having<br>two Edges.     |  |
| <i>Vetus</i> ,         | Old.                               | <i>Lex</i> ,        | a Law.                                                            | <i>Bipennis</i> ,  | f. a Halbert.                   |  |
| <i>Funus</i> ,         | a Burial.                          | <i>Frux</i> ,       | growing Corn.                                                     | <i>Miles</i> ,     | a Soldier.                      |  |
| <i>Rudus</i> ,         | Rubbish.                           | <i>Aquilex</i> ,    | a Contriver<br>of Water-pipes.                                    | <i>Tubar</i> ,     | the Sun-beam.                   |  |
| <i>Glomus</i> ,        | a Clew.                            | <i>Rex</i> ,        | a King.                                                           | <i>Sal</i> ,       | Salt.                           |  |
| <i>Melior vel us</i> , | Better.                            | <i>Grex</i> ,       | a Flock.                                                          | <i>Far</i> ,       | all Kind of Corn.               |  |
| <i>Tellus</i> ,        | the Earth.                         | <i>Remex</i> ,      | a Rower.                                                          | <i>Nectar</i> ,    | Drink of the<br>Gods.           |  |
| <i>Grus</i> ,          | a Cran.                            | <i>Impetex</i> ,    | the Ring-<br>Worm.                                                | <i>Hepar</i> ,     | the Liver.                      |  |
| <i>Sus</i> ,           | a Sow.                             | <i>Pax</i> ,        | Peace.                                                            | <i>Strigilis</i> , | a Horse-comb.                   |  |
| <i>Intercus</i> ,      | the Dropsy.                        | <i>Sphinx</i> ,     | a Kind of Beast.                                                  | <i>Mugilis</i> ,   | a Fish called<br>a Mullet.      |  |
| <i>Ligus</i> ,         | a Man of Li-<br>guria.             | <i>Phryx</i> ,      | a Phrygian.                                                       | <i>Canalis</i> ,   | a Water-pipe.                   |  |
| <i>Subscus</i> ,       | a Wedge.                           | <i>Myrmex</i> ,     | an Emmot.                                                         | <i>Animal</i> ,    | a living Crea-<br>ture.         |  |
| <i>Incus</i> ,         | a Smith's Stithy.                  | <i>Vervex</i> ,     | a Wedder.                                                         | <i>Calcar</i> ,    | a Spur.                         |  |
| <i>Palus</i> ,         | a Mire.                            | <i>Hallex</i> ,     | a Herring.                                                        | <i>Sedile</i> ,    | a Seat.                         |  |
| <i>Virtus</i> ,        | Virtue.                            | <i>Lelex</i> ,      | one of the <i>Lele-</i><br><i>ges</i> , a People in <i>Asia</i> . | <i>Vis</i> ,       | Strength.                       |  |
| <i>Mus</i> ,           | a Mouse.                           | <i>Refex</i> ,      | a cutted Vine<br>Branch.                                          | <i>Paris</i> ,     | Priamus's Son.                  |  |
| <i>Rus</i> ,           | the Country.                       | <i>Selex</i> ,      | the Name of a<br>River.                                           | <i>Finis</i> ,     | the End.                        |  |
| <i>Opus untis</i> ,    | a Town in<br>Greece.               | <i>Supellex</i> ,   | Houſhold-stuff.                                                   | <i>Fuffis</i> ,    | a Batton.                       |  |
| <i>Tripus</i> ,        | any Thing that<br>hath three Feet. | <i>Senex</i> ,      | an old Man.                                                       | <i>Pugil</i> ,     | a Champion.                     |  |
| <i>Æs</i> ,            | Brass.                             | <i>Nix</i> ,        | Snow.                                                             | <i>Vigil</i> ,     | a Watch-man,<br>or Woman.       |  |
| <i>Præ</i> ,           | a Surety.                          | <i>Nox</i> ,        | Night.                                                            | <i>Imber</i> ,     | a Shower.                       |  |
| <i>Laus</i> ,          | Praise.                            | <i>Vertex</i> ,     | the Crown of<br>the Head.                                         | <i>Unguis</i> ,    | a Nail.                         |  |
| <i>Fraus</i> ,         | Deceit.                            | <i>Hylax</i> ,      | a Dogs Name.                                                      | <i>Avis</i> ,      | a Bird.                         |  |
| <i>Luceps</i> ,        | a Fowler.                          |                     |                                                                   | <i>Postis</i> ,    | a Post.                         |  |
| <i>Hiems</i> ,         | the Winter.                        |                     |                                                                   | <i>Vectis</i> ,    | a Bar.                          |  |
| <i>Puls</i> ,          | Pottage.                           |                     |                                                                   |                    | <i>Neptis</i> ,                 |  |
| <i>Frabs</i> ,         | the Balk of an<br>House.           |                     |                                                                   |                    |                                 |  |

|                                                   |                                                    |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Neptis</i> , a Niece                           | <i>Uter utris</i> , a Bottle.                      | <i>Tribus</i> , a Tribe.               |
| <i>Supellex</i> , Household-stuff                 | <i>Os oris</i> , the Mouth.                        | <i>Lacus</i> , a Loch.                 |
| <i>Tridens</i> , a Thing having three Teeth.      | <i>Os ossis</i> , a Bone.                          | <i>Arcus</i> , a Bow.                  |
| <i>Classis</i> , a Navy.                          | <i>Glis</i> , a Rat.                               | <i>Specus</i> , a Den.                 |
| <i>Civis</i> , a Citizen.                         | <i>Faux</i> , the Jaw.                             | <i>Vern</i> , a Spit.                  |
| <i>Amnis</i> , a River.                           | <i>Nix</i> , Snow.                                 | <i>Partus</i> , a Birth.               |
| <i>Ignis</i> , the Fire.                          | <i>Nox</i> , a Night.                              | <i>Quercus</i> , an Oak Tree.          |
| <i>Febris</i> , a Fever.                          | <i>Cor</i> , the Heart.                            | <i>Portus</i> , an Harbour.            |
| <i>Conjunctus</i> , a Yoke-fellow.                | <i>Lis</i> , Strife.                               | <i>Res</i> , a Thing.                  |
| <i>Rus</i> , the Country.                         | <i>Cos</i> , a Whetstone.                          | <i>Res-publica</i> , a Commonwealth.   |
| <i>Vesper</i> , the Evening.                      | <i>Mus</i> , a Mouse.                              | <i>Alter-uter</i> , either of the two. |
| <i>Aprilis</i> , April.                           | <i>Quiris</i> , a Roman.                           | <i>Pater-familias</i> , the Good-man.  |
| <i>Plus</i> , More.                               | <i>Bos</i> , a Cow, or Ox.                         | <i>Juris-consultus</i> , a Lawyer.     |
| <i>Pauper</i> , Poor.                             | <i>Gens</i> , a Nation.                            |                                        |
| <i>Sospes</i> , Safe.                             | <i>Cohors</i> , a Band of Men.                     |                                        |
| <i>Hospes</i> , a Guest.                          | <i>Septunx</i> , Seven Ounces.                     |                                        |
| <i>Dulcis</i> , is, e. Sweet.                     | <i>Mas</i> , the Male.                             |                                        |
| <i>September</i> , September.                     | <i>Civitas</i> , a City.                           |                                        |
| <i>October</i> , October.                         | <i>Canis</i> , a Dog or Bitch.                     |                                        |
| <i>November</i> , November.                       | <i>Panis</i> , Bread.                              |                                        |
| <i>December</i> , December.                       | <i>Vates</i> , a Poet.                             |                                        |
| <i>Felix</i> , Happy.                             | <i>Juvenis</i> , a young Man.                      |                                        |
| <i>Lapis</i> , a Stone.                           | <i>Volucris</i> , a Bird.                          |                                        |
| <i>Tralleis</i> , Cities in Lydia.                | <i>Indoles</i> , an Inclination.                   |                                        |
| <i>Sardeis</i> , an Island on the Coast of Spain. | <i>Proles</i> , Offspring.                         |                                        |
| <i>Gades</i> , an Island on the Coast of Spain.   | <i>Soboles</i> , Offspring.                        |                                        |
| <i>Alpes</i> , the Alps.                          | <i>Opes</i> , Riches.                              |                                        |
| <i>Syrtes</i> , Quick sands.                      | <i>Proceres</i> , Nobles.                          |                                        |
| <i>Degener</i> , Degenerate.                      | <i>Lemures</i> , Ghosts.                           |                                        |
| <i>Vetus</i> , Old.                               | <i>Luceres</i> , a certain Tribe among the Romans. |                                        |
| <i>Melior</i> , Better.                           | <i>Celeres</i> , Horsemen.                         |                                        |
| <i>Lampas</i> , a Lamp.                           | <i>Calites</i> , the Saints above.                 |                                        |
| <i>Vigil</i> , a Watch.                           | <i>Majores</i> , Predecessors.                     |                                        |
| <i>Supplex</i> , a Suppliant.                     | <i>Minores</i> , Successors.                       |                                        |
| <i>Opifex</i> , a Work-man.                       | <i>Mensis</i> , a Month.                           |                                        |
| <i>Pugil</i> , a Champion.                        | <i>Manes</i> , Ghosts.                             |                                        |
| <i>Artifex</i> , a Tradesman.                     | <i>Fores</i> , a Door.                             |                                        |
| <i>Strigilis</i> , a Horsecomb.                   | <i>Poema</i> , a Poem.                             |                                        |
| <i>Inops</i> , Poor.                              | <i>Epigramma</i> , an Epigram.                     |                                        |
| <i>Memor</i> , Mindful.                           | <i>Lampas</i> , a Lamp.                            |                                        |
| <i>Consort</i> , a Companion.                     |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Compos</i> , a Partaker of.                    |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Impos</i> , Unable.                            |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Degener</i> , Base.                            |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Dives</i> , Rich.                              |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Quadrupes</i> , that hath four Feet.           |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Particeps</i> , a Sharer.                      |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Animans</i> , Imboldning.                      |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Samnis</i> , a Samnitian.                      |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Linter</i> , a little Boat.                    |                                                    |                                        |
| <i>Dos</i> , Dowry.                               |                                                    |                                        |

### The Fourth and fifth Declensions.

|                                                            |                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ejus annis causa</i> , on the Account of that Old Wife. | <i>Parce metu</i> , do not fear. |
| <i>Artus</i> , a Joynr.                                    | <i>Actus</i> , a Needle.         |
| <i>Ficus</i> , us, a Fig-tree.                             |                                  |

### Irregular Nouns.

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Jupiter</i> , a Heathen God.     | <i>Jacobus</i> , James.               |
| <i>Scotia</i> , Scotland.           | <i>Londinum</i> , London.             |
| <i>Tybris</i> , Tiber.              | <i>Ætna</i> , the Name of a Mountain. |
| <i>Ruta</i> , Rue.                  | <i>Triticum</i> , Wheat.              |
| <i>Anrum</i> , Gold.                | <i>Lac</i> , Milk.                    |
| <i>Butyrum</i> , Butter.            | <i>Pannus</i> , Cloath.               |
| <i>Justitia</i> , Justice.          | <i>Rhetorica</i> , Rhetorick.         |
| <i>Tot</i> , so many.               | <i>Quor</i> , how many.               |
| <i>Singuli</i> , every one.         | <i>Bini</i> , two and two.            |
| <i>Terni</i> , three and three.     | <i>Unus</i> , One.                    |
| <i>Duo</i> , Two.                   | <i>Tres</i> , Three.                  |
| <i>Quatuor</i> , Four.              | <i>Aliquot</i> , Some.                |
| <i>Quotquot</i> , as many as.       | <i>Totidem</i> , just so many.        |
| <i>Megalenses</i> , Kinds of Plays. | <i>Philippi</i> , the Name of a Town. |

*Saturnalia*, Feasts dedicated to *Saturn*.  
*Bucolica*, Pastoral Songs.  
*Asu*, by Subtily.  
*Jussu*, by Command.  
*Natu*, by Birth.  
*Noctu*, in the Night.  
*Diu*, in the Day.  
*Permissu*, by Permission.  
*Promptu*, in Readiness.  
*Rogatu*, by Entreaty.  
*Sponte*, Willingly.  
*Dica*, an Accusation.  
*Suppetia*, Aid.  
*Inficia*, a Denial.  
*Dapis*, a Dish.  
*Opis*, Help.  
*Precis*, a Prayer.  
*Vicis*, by Course.  
*Ditio*, a Dominion.  
*Frux*, growing Corn.  
*Quis*, Who.  
*Qualis*, of what Sort.  
*Quisque*, every One.  
*Aliquis*, Any.  
*Siquis*, if any Man.  
*Nullus*, None.  
*Neuter*, neither of two.  
*Species*, Likeness.  
*Facies*, the Face.  
*Forum*, the Market Place.  
*Jus*, Right.  
*Instar*, Like.  
*Gummi*, Gum.  
*Tor*, so many.  
*Quot*, how many.  
*Quatuor*, Four.  
*Quinque*, Five.  
*Sex*, Six.  
*Centum*, an Hundred.  
*Ducenti*, two Hundred.  
*Trecenti*, 300.  
*Quadringenti*, 400.  
*Quingenti*, 500.  
*Mille*, a Thousand.  
*Mille hominum*, a Thousand of Men.  
*Mille homines*, a Thousand Men.  
*Arbor vel os*, a Tree.  
*Baculus vel um*, a Staff.  
*Clypeus vel um*, a Buckler.  
*Laurus*, the Laurel-tree.

*Colus*, a Distaff.  
*Quercus*, an Oak-tree.  
*Argos*, the Name of a Country.  
*Focus*, a Sport.  
*Locus*, a Place.  
*Frænum*, a Bridle.  
*Filum*, a Thread.  
*Rastrum*, a Rake.  
*Pergamus*, the Palace of King Priamus.  
*Supelle*, Household-stuff.  
*Balneum*, a Bath.  
*Delicium*, a Delight.  
*Epulum*, a Feast.  
*Nundinum*, a Market.

Comparisons.

*Durus*, Hard.  
*Durior*, Harder.  
*Durissimus*, Hardest.  
*Mollis*, Soft.  
*Mollior*, Softer.  
*Mollissimus*, Softest.  
*Tener*, Tender.  
*Tenerrimus*, Tenderest.  
*Bonus*, Good.  
*Malus*, Evil.  
*Parvus*, Little.  
*Magnus*, Great.  
*Multus*, Much.  
*Facilis*, Easy.  
*Gracilis*, Small.  
*Agilis*, Nimble.  
*Similis*, Like.  
*Humilis*, Humble.  
*Vetus*, Old.  
*Mirificus*, Wonderful.  
*Inferus*, Below.  
*Superus*, Above.  
*Posterus*, Next.  
*Maturus*, Ripe.  
*Dexter*, Right.  
*Citer*, Near.  
*Sinister*, Unfortunate.  
*Exter*, Withour.  
*Nequam*, Wicked.  
*Maledicus*, Railing.  
*Magnificus*, Magnificent.  
*Magniloquus*, that speaketh lofty Things.

*Benevolus*, Favourable.  
*Vterior*, Further.  
*Prior*, the Former.  
*Proprior*, Nearer.  
*Ocyor*, Swifter.  
*Inclutus*, Famous.  
*Fidus*, Faithful.  
*Inuitus*, Unwilling.  
*Falsus*, False.  
*Bellus*, Pretty.  
*Sacer*, Holy.  
*Juvenis*, Young.  
*Senex*, Old.  
*Dives*, Rich.  
*Satur*, Full.  
*Ingens*, Great.  
*Adolescens*, Young.  
*Anterior*, the Former.  
*Licentior*, too Free.  
*Pius*, Pious.  
*Ardus*, Difficult.  
*Idoneus*, Fit.  
*Strenuus*, Valiant.

Note. The Signification of the Comparative and Superlative is easily known from the Positive.

The First Conjugation.

*Amare*, to Love.  
*Dare*, to Give.  
*Stare*, to Stand.  
*Lavare*, to Wash.  
*Potare*, to Drink.  
*Juvare*, to Help.  
*Circundare*, to inclose.  
*Pessundare*, to Ruin.  
*Venundare*, to Sell.  
*Satisfare*, to Satisfy.  
*Astare*, to stand by.  
*Cubare*, to ly down.  
*Sonare*, to Sound.  
*Crepare*, to Crack.  
*Domare*, to Tame.  
*Tonare*, to Thunder.  
*Vetare*, to Forbid.  
*Plicare*, to Fold.  
*Supplicare*, to Supplicat.



|                      |              |                   |               |                    |               |
|----------------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Fricare,</i>      | to Rub.      | <i>Imminere,</i>  | to stick out. | <i>Calefcere,</i>  | to wax Hot.   |
| <i>Secare,</i>       | to Cut.      | <i>Tenere,</i>    | to Hold.      | <i>Frigefcere,</i> | to grow Cool. |
| <i>Necare,</i>       | to Kill.     | <i>Abftinere,</i> | to Refrain.   | <i>Rudere,</i>     | to Roar.      |
| <i>Nexare,</i>       | to Knit.     | <i>Torquere,</i>  | to Wreft.     | <i>Stridere,</i>   | to Ruffle.    |
| <i>Micare,</i>       | to fhine.    | <i>Harere,</i>    | to Stick.     | <i>Scandere,</i>   | to Climb.     |
| <i>Explicare,</i>    | to Explain.  | <i>Torrere,</i>   | to Roaft.     | <i>Edere,</i>      | to Eat.       |
| <i>Multiplicare,</i> | to multiply. | <i>Movere,</i>    | to Move.      | <i>Cadere,</i>     | to Fall.      |
| <i>Triplicare,</i>   | to Triple.   | <i>Favere,</i>    | to Favour.    | <i>Occidere,</i>   | to Kill.      |

### The Second Conjugation.

|                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>Monere,</i>    | to advife.    |
| <i>Jubere,</i>    | to Command.   |
| <i>Sorbere,</i>   | to Sup.       |
| <i>Docere,</i>    | to Teach.     |
| <i>Mifcere,</i>   | to Mingle.    |
| <i>Confere,</i>   | to Think.     |
| <i>Mulcere,</i>   | to Mitigate.  |
| <i>Lucere,</i>    | to Shine.     |
| <i>Frangere,</i>  | to Dine.      |
| <i>Videre,</i>    | to See.       |
| <i>Sedere,</i>    | to Sit.       |
| <i>Ardere,</i>    | to Burn.      |
| <i>Stridere,</i>  | to Crack.     |
| <i>Mordere,</i>   | to Bite.      |
| <i>Tondere,</i>   | to Clip.      |
| <i>Pondere,</i>   | to Hang.      |
| <i>Spondere,</i>  | to Betrothe.  |
| <i>Ridere,</i>    | to Laugh.     |
| <i>Suadere,</i>   | to Perfwaade. |
| <i>Nidere,</i>    | to Sihne.     |
| <i>Mulgere,</i>   | to Milk.      |
| <i>Lugere,</i>    | to Lament.    |
| <i>Augere,</i>    | to Augment.   |
| <i>Indulgere,</i> | to Indulge.   |
| <i>Tergere,</i>   | to Wipe.      |
| <i>Urgere,</i>    | to Urge.      |
| <i>Fulgere,</i>   | to Shine.     |
| <i>Turgere,</i>   | to fwell.     |
| <i>Atgere,</i>    | to be cold.   |
| <i>Ciere,</i>     | to Provoke.   |
| <i>Viere,</i>     | to Gird.      |
| <i>Flere,</i>     | to Weep.      |
| <i>Plere,</i>     | to Fill.      |
| <i>Delere,</i>    | to blot out.  |
| <i>Olere,</i>     | to fmall.     |
| <i>Adolere,</i>   | to grow up.   |
| <i>Pollere,</i>   | to be able.   |
| <i>Timere,</i>    | to fear.      |
| <i>Manere,</i>    | to Stay.      |
| <i>Nere,</i>      | to Spin.      |

|                   |                |                     |                  |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Connivere,</i> | to Wink.       | <i>Cedere,</i>      | to yield.        |
| <i>Fovere,</i>    | to Nourish.    | <i>Cadere,</i>      | to Kill.         |
| <i>Pavere,</i>    | to be Afraid.  | <i>Pendere,</i>     | to weigh.        |
| <i>Valere,</i>    | to be Able.    | <i>Pedere,</i>      | to Fart.         |
| <i>Placere,</i>   | to Pleafe.     | <i>Tendere,</i>     | to Stretch.      |
| <i>Carere,</i>    | to Want.       | <i>Tundere,</i>     | to Knock.        |
| <i>Licere,</i>    | to be Lawful.  | <i>Pandere,</i>     | to Open.         |
| <i>Parere,</i>    | to Obey.       | <i>Scindere,</i>    | to Cut.          |
| <i>Jacere,</i>    | to ly down.    | <i>Findere,</i>     | to Cleave.       |
| <i>Latere,</i>    | to Lurk.       | <i>Fundere,</i>     | to pour out.     |
| <i>Nocere,</i>    | to Hurt.       | <i>Ludere,</i>      | to Play.         |
| <i>Dolere,</i>    | to be Grieved. | <i>Claudere,</i>    | to Shut.         |
| <i>Silere,</i>    | to be Silent.  | <i>Rodere,</i>      | to Gnaw.         |
| <i>Studere,</i>   | to Study.      | <i>Plaudere,</i>    | to clap Hands.   |
|                   |                | <i>Dividere,</i>    | to Divide.       |
|                   |                | <i>Vadere,</i>      | to Go.           |
|                   |                | <i>Radere,</i>      | to Shave.        |
|                   |                | <i>Ledere,</i>      | to Hurt.         |
|                   |                | <i>Strudere,</i>    | to Thruff.       |
|                   |                | <i>Abfcondere,</i>  | to Hide.         |
|                   |                | <i>Sidere,</i>      | to Settle.       |
|                   |                | <i>Incidere,</i>    | to Happen.       |
|                   |                | <i>Accidere,</i>    |                  |
|                   |                | <i>Confundere,</i>  | to Beat.         |
|                   |                | <i>Comedere,</i>    | to Eat.          |
|                   |                | <i>Addere,</i>      | to Add.          |
|                   |                | <i>Affidere,</i>    | to fit by.       |
|                   |                | <i>Refidere,</i>    | to Settle.       |
|                   |                | <i>Pingere,</i>     | to Paint.        |
|                   |                | <i>Stringere,</i>   | to bind hard.    |
|                   |                | <i>Fingere,</i>     | to Feign.        |
|                   |                | <i>Ringere,</i>     | to Grin.         |
|                   |                | <i>Tangere,</i>     | to Touch.        |
|                   |                | <i>Agere,</i>       | to Do.           |
|                   |                | <i>Degere,</i>      | to Lead.         |
|                   |                | <i>Satugere,</i>    | to be Busy.      |
|                   |                | <i>Pergere,</i>     | to go on.        |
|                   |                | <i>Surgere,</i>     | to Rife.         |
|                   |                | <i>Ambigere,</i>    | to Surround.     |
|                   |                | <i>Vergere,</i>     | to Incline.      |
|                   |                | <i>Frangere,</i>    | to Break.        |
|                   |                | <i>Pangere,</i>     | to Bargain.      |
|                   |                | <i>Legere,</i>      | to Read.         |
|                   |                | <i>Negligere,</i>   | to Neglect.      |
|                   |                | <i>Intelligere,</i> | to Underftand.   |
|                   |                |                     | <i>Diligere,</i> |

### The Third Conjugation.

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Bibere,</i>        | to Drink.         |
| <i>Scabere,</i>       | to Scratch.       |
| <i>Lambere,</i>       | to Lick.          |
| <i>Nubere,</i>        | to be married.    |
| <i>Scribere,</i>      | to Write.         |
| <i>Sorbere,</i>       | to up.            |
| <i>Accumbere,</i>     | to ly down.       |
| <i>Accubare,</i>      | to fit down.      |
| <i>Icere,</i>         | to ftrike.        |
| <i>Vincere,</i>       | to overcome.      |
| <i>Dicere,</i>        | to Say.           |
| <i>Ducere,</i>        | to Lead.          |
| <i>Pascere,</i>       | to Spare.         |
| <i>Pafcere,</i>       | to Feed.          |
| <i>Agnofcere,</i>     | to know.          |
| <i>Cognofcere,</i>    |                   |
| <i>Poscere,</i>       | to Demand.        |
| <i>Discere,</i>       | to Learn.         |
| <i>Compefcere,</i>    | to feed together. |
| <i>Dispefcere,</i>    | to drive away.    |
| <i>Conquinifcere,</i> | to Stoop.         |
| <i>Fatifcere,</i>     | to Fail.          |
| <i>Glifcere,</i>      | to wax Fat.       |
| <i>Crefcere,</i>      | to Grow.          |

*Diligere*, to Love.  
*Pungere*, to Prick.  
*Spargere*, to Spread.  
*Mergere*, to Drown.  
*Tergeré*, to Wipe.  
*Figere*, to Fasten.  
*Frigere*, to Fry.  
*Clangere*, to Sound.  
*Ningere*, to Snow.  
*Sugere*, to Suck.  
*Lingere*, to Lick.  
*Angere*, to trouble.  
*Regere*, to Govern.  
*Extinguere*, to Quench.  
*Peragere*, to Finish.  
*Redigere*, to Reduce.  
*Trahere*, to Draw.  
*Vehere*, to Carry.  
*Elicere*, to Draw.  
*Facere*, to Do.  
*Jacere*, to Cast.  
*Fodere*, to Dig.  
*Fugere*, to Fly.  
*Cupere*, to Desire.  
*Sapere*, to be Wise.  
*Capere*, to Take.  
*Rapere*, to Ravish.  
*Parere*, to Beget.  
*Quatere*, to Shake.  
*Meiere*, to Piss.  
*Mingere*, to Behold.  
*Aspicere*, to Entice.  
*Allicere*, to Draw.  
*Elicere*, to Shake.  
*Concutere*, to Worship.  
*Colere*, to Counsel.  
*Consulere*, to Hide.  
*Occulere*, to Nourish.  
*Alere*, to Grind.  
*Molere*, to strike.  
*Cellere*, to strike.  
*Callere*, to put away.  
*Pellere*, to Pluck.  
*Vellere*, to Deceive.  
*Fallere*, to lift up.  
*Tollere*, to Salt.  
*Sallere*, to play on a Lute.  
*Pfallere*, to Tremble.  
*Tremere*, to take away.  
*Demere*, to lay open.  
*Promere*, to Take.  
*Sumere*, to Comb.  
*Comere*,

*Emerere*, to Buy.  
*Premere*, to Press.  
*Fremere*, to Roar.  
*Ponere*, to Put.  
*Gignere*, to Beget.  
*Cernere*, to Behold.  
*Canere*, to Sing.  
*Temnere*, to Despise.  
*Spernere*, to Cover.  
*Sternere*, to Dawb.  
*Linere*, to Permit.  
*Sinere*, to Sing first.  
*Pracinere*, to Break.  
*Rumpere*, to make a Noise.  
*Streperere*, to Pluck.  
*Carpere*, to Boil.  
*Coquere*, to Leave.  
*Linquere*, to Leave.  
*Relinquere*, to Seek.  
*Quarere*, to Wear.  
*Terere*, to Bear.  
*Ferre*, to Carry.  
*Gerere*, to Run.  
*Currere*, to Rage.  
*Furere*, to Burn.  
*Vrere*, to Brush.  
*Verrere*, to Sow.  
*Serere*, to Bake.  
*Pinere*, to Knead.  
*Depere*, to Visit.  
*Visere*, to Do.  
*Fassere*, to Take.  
*Lapescere*, to Take.  
*Lacessere*, to Provoke.  
*Flectere*, to Bend.  
*Plectere*, to Knit.  
*Nectere*, to Tie.  
*Pectere*, to Comb.  
*Petere*, to Ask.  
*Mittere*, to Send.  
*Metere*, to Reap.  
*Vertere*, to Turn.  
*Stertere*, to Short.  
*sistere*, to Stay.  
*Resistere*, to Resist.  
*Vivere*, to Live.  
*Solvere*, to Loose.  
*Volvere*, to Roll.  
*Calvere*, to Deceive.  
*Lavere*, to Wash.  
*Sruere*, to Build.  
*Fluere*, to Flow.  
*Pluere*, to Rain.

*Ruere*, to Rush.  
*Metuere*, to Fear.  
*Luere*, to Suffer.  
*Congruere*, to Suit.  
*Annuere*, to Favour.  
*Cluere*, to Shine.  
*Respuere*, to Refuse.  
*Inguere*, to Invade.  
*Acuere*, to Whet.  
*Diruere*, to Destroy.  
*Innuere*, to Nod.  
*Nexere*, to Knit.  
*Texere*, to Weave.

The Fourth Conjugation.

*Audire*, to Hear.  
*Singultire*, to Sob.  
*Sepelire*, to Bury.  
*Vanire*, to be Sold.  
*Venire*, to Come.  
*Vincire*, to Bind.  
*Sancire*, to Establish.  
*Amicire*, to Cloath.  
*Haurire*, to draw.  
*Sepire*, to Inclose.  
*Cambire*, to Exchange.  
*Sarcire*, to Mend.  
*Farcire*, to Stuff.  
*Sentire*, to Perceive.  
*Raucire*, to be Hoarse.  
*Fulcire*, to Prop.  
*Parire*, to bring forth.  
*Comperire*, to find out.  
*Reperire*, to Find.  
*Insilire*, to leap upon.  
*Aperire*, to Open.  
*Ferire*, to Strike.  
*Parturire*, to be in Labour.  
*Esurire*, to Hunger.  
*Nupturire*, to desire to Marry.

Compound Verbs.

*Vincere*, to Overcome.  
*Devincere*, to ty up.  
*Dare*,

|                   |                  |                    |               |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Dare,</i>      | to Give.         | <i>Oblivisci,</i>  | to Forget.    |
| <i>Stare,</i>     | to Stand.        | <i>Gradi,</i>      | to Go.        |
| <i>Poscere,</i>   | to Demand.       | <i>Queri,</i>      | to Complain.  |
| <i>Discece,</i>   | to Learn.        | <i>Quari,</i>      | to be Sought. |
| <i>Præcurrere</i> | to Excel.        | <i>Frui,</i>       | to Enjoy.     |
| <i>Repungere</i>  | to prick a gain. | <i>Pati,</i>       | to Suffer.    |
| <i>Tendere</i>    | to Stretch.      | <i>Perpeti,</i>    | to Endure.    |
| <i>Attendere,</i> | to Attend.       | <i>Niti,</i>       | to Endeavour. |
| <i>Astare,</i>    | to stand by.     | <i>Sequi,</i>      | to Follow.    |
| <i>Reposcere,</i> | to Demand.       | <i>Uti,</i>        | to Use.       |
| <i>Dediscere,</i> | to Forget.       | <i>Loqui,</i>      | to Speak.     |
| <i>Currere,</i>   | to Run.          | <i>Expergisci,</i> | to Awake.     |

## Verbs in Or.

|                   |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>Fatere,</i>    | to Confess. |
| <i>Confiteri,</i> | Idem.       |
| <i>Reri,</i>      | to Think.   |
| <i>Misereri,</i>  | to Pity.    |
| <i>Labi,</i>      | to Slide.   |
| <i>Nancisci,</i>  | to Get.     |

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Gradi,</i>      | to Go.        |
| <i>Queri,</i>      | to Complain.  |
| <i>Quari,</i>      | to be Sought. |
| <i>Frui,</i>       | to Enjoy.     |
| <i>Pati,</i>       | to Suffer.    |
| <i>Perpeti,</i>    | to Endure.    |
| <i>Niti,</i>       | to Endeavour. |
| <i>Sequi,</i>      | to Follow.    |
| <i>Uti,</i>        | to Use.       |
| <i>Loqui,</i>      | to Speak.     |
| <i>Expergisci,</i> | to Awake.     |
| <i>Pacisci,</i>    | to Bargain.   |
| <i>Ulcisci,</i>    | to Revenge.   |
| <i>Fatisci,</i>    | to Bewray.    |
| <i>Comminisci</i>  | to Invent.    |
| <i>Adipisci,</i>   | to Obtain.    |
| <i>Proficisci,</i> | to Go.        |
| <i>Apisci,</i>     | to Obtain.    |
| <i>Nasci,</i>      | to be Born.   |
| <i>Oriri,</i>      | to Rise.      |
| <i>Mori,</i>       | to Die.       |
| <i>Metiri,</i>     | to Measure.   |
| <i>Ordiri,</i>     | to Begin.     |
| <i>Assentiri,</i>  | to Assent.    |
| <i>Experiri,</i>   | to Try.       |

## Irregular Verbs.

|                  |                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Gaudere,</i>  | to Rejoyce.                           |
| <i>Solere,</i>   | to Use.                               |
| <i>Fieri,</i>    | to be done.                           |
| <i>Fidere,</i>   | to Trust.                             |
| <i>Morere,</i>   | to Mourn.                             |
| <i>Audere,</i>   | to Dare.                              |
| <i>Suescere,</i> | to be Wont.                           |
| <i>Carere,</i>   | to Want.                              |
| <i>Jurare,</i>   | to Swear.                             |
| <i>Prandere,</i> | to Dine.                              |
| <i>Nubere,</i>   | to be Married.                        |
| <i>Misereri</i>  | to Pity.                              |
| <i>Cenare,</i>   | to Sup.                               |
| <i>Pigere,</i>   | to Fret.                              |
| <i>Tader,</i>    | Idem.                                 |
| <i>Pudere,</i>   | to be ashamed.                        |
| <i>Licere</i>    | to be Lawful.                         |
| <i>Potare,</i>   | to Drink.                             |
| <i>Libere,</i>   | vel <i>Lubere,</i> to be pleasing to. |
| <i>Titubare</i>  | to Stagger.                           |
| <i>Placere,</i>  | to Please.                            |

F I N I S.



The





# The NEW METHOD

## OF

# Teaching LATIN,

## BY

# Ten ENGLISH PARTICLES.

**T**HE English Particles, or Signs of Cases, on which this New Method is founded, are, *OF, TO, FOR, IN, WITH, FROM, BY, AT, ON, THAN.* The Nominative before, and the Accusative after the Verb, have no Sign, as, *John reads Virgil.* The Signs of the Gen. are *OF*; or *'S*; as, *A Piece of Bread; The Master's Book.* The Signs of the Dat. are *TO* or *FOR*; as, *Do Harm TO no Man; Profitable FOR the Common-wealth.* The Signs of the Abl. are *IN, WITH, FROM, BY, AT, ON, THAN*; as, *I saw the Master on Monday, AT three a Clock, IN the School.*

*A, AN, THE,* are not Signs of Cases, but Articles frequently prefixt to English Substantives; as, *A Book, AN Army, THE KING.* But the Adj. usually stands between the Subst. and its Article; as, *A Book, A new Book.* *A* is put before a Consonant, and *AN* before a Vowel, and are both of a general Import: But *THE* hath a restraining Power, and makes a common Noun equivalent to a proper; as, *A King, THE King.*

Words are joyn'd in Sentences either by *Concord* or *Government.*



## Concord of Words.

### First Concord.

**A Verb** of the Finite Mood agrees with the Nominative before it, in Number and Person.

As, *I love, ego amo. You play, tu ludis. The Master teacheth, præceptor docet. We sing, nos canimus. Ye write, vos scribitis. The Boys learn, pueri discunt.*

*Obs.* *Ego* is the first Person; *Tu*, and all Vocatives are of the second. All other Nouns and Pronouns are of the third.

### Exception.

**A Verb** of the Infinitive Mood hath the Accusative before it.

As *Dicunt Regem adventare. Rumor est natum meum amare.* The Nom. before the Verb may be made an Acc. and the Verb put in the Infinitive, leaving out *Quod* or *Ut*; as *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales; Gaudeo te bene valere.* But the latter is more elegant.

Second

## Second Concord.

In *Latin*, the Adjective agrees with the Substantive in Gender, Number and Case, when, in *English*, there is no Sign of a Case between them.

As, *a good Boy*, bonus puer. *A good Pen*, bona penna. *A good Apple*, bonum pomum. In *English*, the Adj. stands commonly before the Subst. as *a good Boy*: And sometimes after it, as, *the Boy who*, puer qui. *The Woman who*, mulier quæ. *The Creature which*, animal quod. For the Adj. *who* or *which* (qui, quæ, quod) agrees always in Gender and Number with its foregoing Subst. The only Difficulty lyes in finding its Case; for which take this following Direction.

The Case of the Adj. *Qui, Quæ, Quod*.

1. When there is nothing between *Who, Which* or *Whom*, and the following Verb, then they are made by the Nom. 2. But if there be any Thing between, then (tho' they stand before, yet) they are made by such Case as the Verb will have after it.

1. As, *The Boy WHO learns*, puer qui discit. *The Woman WHO sings*, mulier quæ cantat. *The Creature WHICH runs*, animal quod currit. 2. *The Master WHOM we obey*, præceptor cui paremus. *The Master WHO we love*, præceptor quem amamus. *The Book WHICH you want*, liber quo cares. The Subst. before *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, may also be repeated again after it, as, *liber quem* [librum] *scribo*. *Urbs est vestra quam* [urbem] *statuo*. And even when the Subst. is not repeated, we may conceive it in our Minds; and then the Adj. *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, will agree with the Subst. after it in Gender, Number and Case.

When *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, comes between two Subst. of a diverse Gender, it may agree with either of them, as, *animal quod*, or *quem vocamus hominem*. *Stella quæ*, or *qui Phaeton dicitur*.

How to place the Adj. *Qui, Quæ, Quod*.

|                          |   |           |   |         |
|--------------------------|---|-----------|---|---------|
| Liber quem Scribo        | } | bonus est | } | Vulgo.  |
| Quem scribo Librum       |   |           |   | Ornate  |
| Liber quem Librum scribo |   |           |   | Raro.   |
| Librum quem scribo       |   |           |   | Poetice |

## Third Concord.

When, in *English*, two or more Subst. have no Sign of a Case between them, then, in *Latin* they agree in Case.

As, *Queen Ann*, Regina Anna, *I saw Queen Ann*, Vidi Reginam Annam. *I love the Lord Jesus Christ*, Amo Dominum Jesum Christum. Sometimes the Substantives differ in Gender; as, *Mons æterna*! Or, in Number, as, *Civitas Athenæ*.

*Note.* Some Verb or Participle understood must be the Term of Connection between Nouns joyn'd in this Construction; as, *Urbs Roma*, [sup. *gens*, or *quæ est*, or *dicitur*] but if the Sign of a Case interveens, the Noun following complies with it; as, *The City OF Rome*, *Urbs Romæ* [sup. *dicta de nomine*.]

Annota-

## Annotations on Concord.

1. Two or more Substantives singular (having the Conjunctions *&*, *ac*, *atque*, or the Preposition *cum* between them) have a Verb or Adj. Plur. as, *Petrus & Joannes ludunt. Pater & Mater sunt irati. Rex & Regina qui imperant, sunt invicti.*

2. A Verb Plural agrees with the Nom. of the first Person, rather than the second; and with the second, rather than the third; as, *Ego & tu studemus. Tu & ille studetis.*

3. The Adj. Plur. agrees in Gender with the Subj. Masculine, rather than Feminine; and with the Feminine rather than Neuter; as, *Pater & Mater sunt irati. Lena & Scortum sunt impudicæ.*

4. But if the Substantives signify Things without Life, the Adj. is commonly in the Neuter; as, *Calamus, Charta & Atramentum sunt necessaria [sup. Instrumenta.]*

## Concord of Sentences.

1. The Question *Quis, Quæ, Quod*, and its Answer, are made by Words of like Construction; as, *Quis docet? Resp. Præceptor docet. Cujus est liber? Resp. Est liber fratris. Cui pares? Resp. Pareo Regi. Quem amas? Resp. Amo patrem. Quocares? Resp. Careo libro. Quanti emisti hunc librum? Resp. Emi hunc librum talento.* But in the Answer we usually express nothing but the Noun; as, *Quis docet? Resp. Præceptor. Cujus est liber? Resp. Fratris.*

2. *Et, ac, que, atque, nec, neque, seu, sive, aut, ve, vel*; also *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, have commonly like Moods and Cases before and after them; as, *Sede & lege. Amo Patrem & Matrem.* When they have like Cases, there is an Ellipsis of the Verb; as, *Amo Patrem & Matrem* i. e. *amo Patrem & sup. amo Matrem*, and so of all others.

## Government of Words.

The Rules of Government do by four Ways discover the Case of the subj.

1. By its wanting the Sign of a Case, and standing before or after the Verb.
2. By its having the Sign of a Case.
3. By its Signification.
4. By its depending on some undeclinable Word, whether Preposition or Adverb.

## C H A P. I.

## Of the Government of Substantives wanting Signs of Cases.

## FIRST RULE.

When a Substantive, without a Sign, comes before a Verb, it is the Nominative.

As, *James reads, Jacobus legit. The Boys learn, pueri discunt.* The Nom. stands always before the Verb, unless when a Question is asked, or the Verb be of the Imperative Mood, and then the Nom. is cast after the Verb; as, *Lovest thou? Amas tu? Let him love, Amet ille.* This Rule is but a Repetition of the First Concord, with the Consideration of the Noun's wanting a Sign.

## SECOND



## THE NEW METHOD.

## SECOND RULE.

When a Substantive, without a Sign, comes after the Verb, it is the Accusative.

As, *James reads Virgil, Jacobus legit Virgilium. I have an Apple, Ego habeo pomum. Peter went home, Petrus ivit domum. Loquor veritatem. Curro cursum. Eo iter longum. Juvat, delectat, decet, oportet nos legere. Poenitet, pudet me peccati. Piget, tædet me vitæ. Miseret me tui. Roga Præceptorem veniam. Doce me lectionem.* As the asking of a Question casts the Nom. behind, so it sets the Acc. before the Verb; as, *Whom lovest thou? Quem amas tu?*

*Exceptions from the Second Rule.**First Exception.*

*Sum, Forem, Fio, Sto, Sedeo, Cubo, Jaceo, Dormio,* and passive Verbs have after them a Nominative.

As, *I am a Boy, ego sum puer. The Master is learned, Præceptor est doctus. Petrus erat rectus. Sedet curvus. Cubat, jacet, dormit supinus. I am called Peter, Nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor Petrus. I am counted, esteemed, &c. a Poet, Habsor, existimor, scribor, salutor Poeta.* Note, The Nom. after the Verb is not governed by the Verb, but agrees with the Noun before it; and therefore the Case before and after the Verb must be the same; as, *Deus est justus: Credo Deum esse justum.*

*Second Exception.*

*Satago, Misereor, Miseresco, Interest, Refert, Obliviscor, Reminiscor, Recordor, Memini,* have after them a Genitive.

As, *Mind your Business, rerum tuarum satage. O God, pity (or have mercy on) me, miserere mei Deus. Pity the Arcadian King, misereſcite Arcadii Regis. It concerns the Master that the Boys learn, Interest, or Refert Præceptoris pueros discere. I forget, or remember the History, Obliviscor, Reminiscor, Recordor, Memini Historiæ, or, we may say, historiæ; for these four Verbs have often the Acc. according to the General Rule.*

These two, *Interest* and *Refert* have a peculiar Construction with *Mea, Tua, Sua, Nostra, Vestra, Cuius*, which are Accusatives plural from Pronouns possessive; as, *It concerns me, Refert or Interest mea.* See the Critical Syntax, Rule 4. Figure 1.

*Third Exception.*

*Utor, Abutor, Fruor, Fungor, Vescor, Careo, Egeo, Indigeo, Potior, Sto, Conſto, Valeo,* have after them an Ablative.

As, *We may use, but not abuse Riches, licet uti, sed non abuti divitiis. I want Money, Careo, Egeo, Indigeo pecunia. This Book costs, stands, is worth three Shillings, hic liber Stat, Constat, Valet tribus assibus. Fruor conspectu amici. Præceptor fungitur officio. Vescor herbis. Potior Voto. Fungor, Fruor, Potior, Utor, Vescor, Vilio, are sometimes read with an Acc. and Egeo, Indigeo, Potior, with a Gen. See the Critical Syntax, Rule 6. Figure 3,*

Fourth

## Fourth Exception.

*Placeo, Displiceo, Suadeo, Persuadeo, Respondeo, Nubo, Vaco,* and Impersonal Verbs, have after them the Dative.

As, *I please, or displease, no Man*, placeo, displiceo nemini. *I persuade my self*, Suadeo, Persuadeo mihi. *Marry, thy Equal*, Nube pari. *If you be at Leisure*, si tibi vacat. Impersonal Verbs, as, *It sufficeth us*, sufficit nobis. *It liketh (or pleaseth me)*, libet, lubet mihi. But most Impersonal Verbs belong to Chap. 2. Rule 3.

## Fifth Exception.

Verbs signifying *Profit, Damage, Trust, Distrust, Favouring, Flattering, Commanding, Obeying, Serving, Resisting, Helping*, have next after them a Dative.

*Profit*, as, prodest, proficit, satisfacit nobis.

*Damage*, as, noceo, malefacio, officio nemini; But lædo cum Acc.

*Trust*, as, fido confido, mando, credo amicis.

*Distrust*, as, diffido, suspicor inimicis.

*Favouring*, as, Deus favet, annuit, aspirat coeptis.

*Flattering*, as, adulator, blandior patri. Applaudo indoctis.

*Commanding*, as, Rex imperat, temperat, dominatur subditis: Sed

Jubeo cum Acc.

*Obeying*, as, obedio, obtempero, pareo, morem gero Principi.

*Serving*, as, ancillor, famulor, servio parentibus.

*Resisting*, as, Deus obstat, obest, repugnat, resistit improbis.

*Helping*, as, Deus auxiliatur, opitulatur, succurrit, patrocinatur miseris;

Medetur, medicatur ægrotis. But *Juvo, adjuvo, curo, sano*, govern the Acc. See the Critical Syntax, Rule 5. Figure 2.

## Sixth Exception.

Verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super*, have after them a Dat.

*Ad*: Petrus assidet, adstat, accumbit, aridet Improbis.

*Ante*: Virtus anteit, antecellit, antecedit omnibus rebus.

*Con*: Condonâ mihi; Collude paribus; Componere magna parvis.

*In*: Insidet, innititur mensæ; Ignosce mihi; Illudit nobis.

*Inter*: Interesse concioni; Lupus intervenit fabulæ.

*Ob*: Obsequitur suo animo; Somnus obrepit mihi.

*Post*: Postponit pecuniam famæ; Posthabui seria ludo.

*Præ*: Præibo tibi; Præripuit mihi librum; Præluceat majoribus.

*Sub*: Pe rus subest meo imperio; Succede mihi.

*Super*: Filius supervixit Patri; Superesse labori. See the Critical Syntax, Rule 5. Figure 3.

Here follows a List of such Verbs as belong to this Sixth Exception? Those marked thus [\*] are of a various Construction.

| AD.      | Allabor              | <i>I slide by</i> | Applo-ro            | <i>I condole with</i> |
|----------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Accedo   | * <i>I approach</i>  | Alludo            | <i>I smile on</i>   | Appropinquo           |
| Acclamo  | <i>I applaud</i>     | Admugio           | <i>I low at</i>     | * <i>I approach</i>   |
| Affulgeo | <i>I shine upon</i>  | Admurmuro         | <i>I grumble at</i> | Acquiesco             |
| Adhmnio  | * <i>I neigh at</i>  |                   | Adrepo              | <i>I rely on</i>      |
| Adjaceo  | <i>I border upon</i> | Applaudo          | <i>I cry up</i>     | Arrideo               |
|          |                      |                   |                     | <i>I smile upon</i>   |
|          |                      |                   |                     | K Assentio            |

# THE NEW METHOD.

|              |                        |             |                         |            |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| Assentio     | <i>I agree with</i>    | Incommodo   | <i>I hurt</i>           | Obsum      | <i>I am against</i>    |
| Asservio     | <i>I wait on</i>       | Incubo      | <i>I ly on</i>          | Obstrepo   | <i>I clamour at</i>    |
| Assideo      | <i>I sit by</i>        | Incumbo     | <i>I ly at</i>          | Obtrecto   | <i>I defame</i>        |
| Assisto      | <i>I aid</i>           | Incurro     | <i>* I rush upon</i>    | Obvenio    | <i>I befall</i>        |
| Aspiro       | <i>* I favour</i>      | Indignor    | <i>I am angry at</i>    | Obversor   | <i>I ly in View</i>    |
| Aspulator    | <i>I agree with</i>    | Indormio    | <i>I sleep on</i>       | POST.      |                        |
| Astrepo      | <i>I make noise</i>    | Indulgeo,   | <i>I humour</i>         | Postfero   | <i>I disparage</i>     |
| Adsum        | <i>I am present</i>    | Innato,     | <i>I swim upon</i>      | Posthabeo  | <i>I disesteem</i>     |
| Assurgo      | <i>I rise up to</i>    | Innitor     | <i>* I rely on</i>      | Postpono   | <i>I postpone this</i> |
| Adversor     | <i>I oppose</i>        | Inservio    | <i>I wait on</i>        |            | <i>to that</i>         |
| ANTE.        |                        | Insideo     | <i>I sit upon</i>       | PRÆ.       |                        |
| Antecedo     | <i>* I surpass</i>     | Insidio     | <i>I sit upon</i>       | Præcipio   | <i>I command</i>       |
| Anteo        | <i>* I excel</i>       | Insidior    | <i>I ensnare</i>        | Præeo      | <i>I outgo</i>         |
| Antefero     | <i>I prefer</i>        | Insto       | <i>I pursue</i>         | Præluceo   | <i>I outshine</i>      |
| Antepono     | <i>I prefer</i>        | Insum       | <i>I am in</i>          | Præsum     | <i>I over-rule</i>     |
| Antestto     | <i>I excel</i>         | Insufurro   | <i>I whisper in</i>     | Præsto     | <i>I excell</i>        |
| Antevenio    | <i>* I outgo</i>       | Invideo     | <i>* I envy</i>         | Præstolor  | <i>I wait for</i>      |
| Anteverto    | <i>* I prevent</i>     | INTER.      |                         | Prævaleo   | <i>I overcome</i>      |
| COM, or CON. |                        | Intercedo   | <i>I withstand</i>      | SUB.       |                        |
| Conduco      | <i>* Good for</i>      | Interiaceo  | <i>I ly between</i>     | Succedo    | <i>I follow</i>        |
| Confido      | <i>I trust to</i>      | Interloquor | <i>I interrupt</i>      | Succenseo  | <i>I am angry at</i>   |
| Cohæreo      | <i>I stick to</i>      | Interpono   | <i>I interpose</i>      | Succumbo   | <i>I understoop</i>    |
| Comminor     | <i>I threaten</i>      | Intersum    | <i>I am present at</i>  | Succurro   | <i>I relieve</i>       |
| Commodo      | <i>I advantage</i>     | Intervenio  | <i>I come upon</i>      | Subolet    | <i>'tis scented by</i> |
| Consentio    | <i>* I agree with</i>  | OB.         |                         | Suppetit   | <i>it sufficeth</i>    |
| Consulo      | <i>* I provide for</i> | Obedio      | <i>I obey</i>           | Subscribo  | <i>I assent to</i>     |
| Convenio     | <i>* I suit with</i>   | Occurro     | <i>I run against</i>    | Subsido    | <i>I sink under</i>    |
| Convicior    | <i>I revile</i>        | Occurso     | <i>I encounter</i>      | Subsisto   | <i>* I stand under</i> |
| Convivo      | <i>* I dwell with</i>  | Officio     | <i>I hinder</i>         | Subsum     | <i>I am under</i>      |
| IN.          |                        | Oblatro     | <i>I bark at</i>        | Subvenio   | <i>I assist</i>        |
| Ignosco      | <i>I pardon</i>        | Obloquor    | <i>I gainsay</i>        | SUPER.     |                        |
| Illabor      | <i>I fall upon</i>     | Obluctor    | <i>I strive against</i> | Superaddo  | <i>I superadd</i>      |
| Illachrymo   | <i>I weep over</i>     | Obmurmuro   | <i>I murmur</i>         | Supercurro | <i>I over-run</i>      |
| Illatro      | <i>I bark at</i>       |             |                         | Superfluo  | <i>I overflow</i>      |
| Illuceo      | <i>I shine upon</i>    | Obnitor     | <i>I resist</i>         | Superfedeo | <i>* I give over</i>   |
| Illudo       | <i>* I mock at</i>     | Oppedo      | <i>I affront</i>        | Superfum   | <i>I remain over</i>   |
| Immineo      | <i>* I hover over</i>  | Obsecundo   | <i>I assist</i>         | Supervenio | <i>I surprise</i>      |
| Immoror      | <i>* I stay upon</i>   | Obsequor    | <i>I comply with</i>    | Supervivo  | <i>I survive</i>       |
| Impono       | <i>* I put upon</i>    | Obsidior    | <i>I ly in wait for</i> |            |                        |
| Impendeo     | <i>I hang over</i>     | Obstituto   | <i>I hinder</i>         |            |                        |

Obs. The Preposition which compounds the Verb, and stands before it in Latin, is usually set after it in English; as *Adeo* [i. e. eo ad] *I go TO*. *CONsulo*, I provide *FOR*. *ASsideo*, I sit *BY*. *INTERsum*, I am present *at*. *INnitor*, I rely *ON*. *CONfido*, I trust *TO*. When the Sign which follows a compound Word is thus a Part of its Signification, then the following Noun hath no Sign. Hence Verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *in*, govern sometimes the Acc. according to the second Rule; as. *Adeo scholam*. *Antecessit omnes*. *Incessit mæstitia animos*. We say also, *Egredior domum*, or *domo*, because compounded with *e*, or *extra*.



## C H A P. II.

*How to find the Case of the Substantive by English Particles (or Signs of Cases) set before it.*

*Concerning the Sign OF after a Noun.*

## FIRST RULE.

OF after a Substantive, Adjective, or Adverb, is a Sign that the following Word must be in the Genitive Case.

1. OF after a Substantive, as, *A Piece OF Bread*, Frustum panis. *The Love OF Money*, Amor nummi.

This Sign OF lyes often hid under 'S, at the End of a Substantive; as, *The Master's Book*, i. e. *The Book OF the Master*, Liber præceptoris. We say also, *His, Her's, Their's Ours, Your's, Whose*, for OF Him, Her Them, &c.

2. OF after an Adjective, as, *Expert OF War*, peritus belli. *Ignorant OF the Grammar*, Ignarus Grammaticæ. *Guilty OF Theft*, Reus furti. *Free OF Wickedness*, Purus Sceleris.

Partitive Adjectives agree in Gender with the Genitive plural, as, *One OF the Brethren*, Unus fratrum. *None OF the Sisters*, Nulla sororum. *Which OF the living Creatures?* Quod animalium? If the Gender of the Gen. plural be different from the Gender of the Substantive before the partitive Adjective, then it is more elegant to make the Adjective agree in the Gender with the former Substantive, as, *The Rose is the fairest OF Flowers*, Rosa est pulcherrima florum; rather than pulcherrimus.

OF after partitive Adjectives may also be made by *de, e, ex, or inter*; as, unus fratrum, or, de, e, ex fratribus, or, inter fratres.

3. OF after an Adverb, as, *a little OF Water*, parum aquæ. *Enough OF Wine*, Satis vini. See the Critical Syntax Rule 4. Figures 6. & 8.

*Four Exceptions about OF, after a Noun.*

## First Exception.

OF between two Substantives, is a Sign, that the latter may be put in the Gen. or Abl. if it have an Adjective of Praise or Dispraise before it.

As, *A Boy OF a good Wit*, Puer boni ingenii, or, bono ingenio. *A Man OF no Credit*, Vir nullius fidei, or, nulla fide. See the Critical Syntax Rule 6. Figure 6.

## Second Exception.

OF after the English of *Dignus, Indignus*, and Adjectives signifying Plenty or Want, is a Sign of the Genitive or Ablative.

As, *Worthy, Unworthy OF Praise*, Dignus, Indignus laudis. *I am full OF Business*, Sum plenus negotii, or, negotio. *The Town was full OF Soldiers*, Villa completa militibus erat. *Void OF Wrath*, Vacuus ira. *A Body void OF Life*, Corpus animæ inane. *Deprived OF Eyes*, Captus oculis. See the Crit. Syntax, Rule 4. Fig 7. also Rule 6. Fig.

Here

## THE NEW METHOD.

Here follows an Alphabetical List of such Adjectives as signify Plenty, or Want.

|                    |                  |                  |                   |                  |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Ægrotus,</i>    | <i>Sick</i>      | <i>Inanis,</i>   | <i>Empty</i>      | <i>Orbus,</i>    | <i>Deprived</i>  |
| <i>Captus,</i>     | <i>Bereft</i>    | <i>Inops,</i>    | <i>Void.</i>      | <i>Plenus,</i>   | <i>Full</i>      |
| <i>Copiosus,</i>   | <i>Full</i>      | <i>Liber.</i>    | <i>Void.</i>      | <i>Refertus</i>  | <i>Full</i>      |
| <i>Defectus,</i>   | <i>Destitute</i> | <i>Locuples.</i> | <i>Full.</i>      | <i>Satur,</i>    | <i>Full</i>      |
| <i>Destitutus,</i> | <i>Forfaken.</i> | <i>Mancus,</i>   | <i>Defective.</i> | <i>poliatus,</i> | <i>Robbed</i>    |
| <i>Dives,</i>      | <i>Rich.</i>     | <i>Mutilus,</i>  |                   | <i>Vacuus,</i>   | <i>Empty</i>     |
| <i>Fœtus,</i>      | <i>Big.</i>      | <i>Nudus,</i>    | <i>Naked.</i>     | <i>Viduus,</i>   | <i>Deprived.</i> |

## Third Exception.

OF after the *English* of *Opus, Usus, Latius, Superbus, Natus, Satus, Cretus, Ortus, Edius*, is a Sign of the Abl.

As, *I have need of a Book, Opus est mihi libro. I have need of your Help, Opus est mihi tua opera. Glad OF Honour, Latius honore. Proud OF his Bull, Tauro superbus. Born OF noble Parentage, Natus, Satus, Cretus, &c. genere nobili.* See the Crit. Syntax, Rule 6, Fig. 2.

## Fourth Exception.

OF, signifying the Matter whereof any Thing is made, is latined by *de, e, or ex.*

As, *He made a Chair OF Wood, and a Cup of Gold, Cathedram ex ligno & poculum ex auro fecit.* This is sometimes made by a Gen. as *Argentii bifores valvæ*: Or the Noun of Matter may be made an Adj. as, *Poculum ex auro, or, Poculum aureum.*

Note. OF after the *English* of Adjectives in *bilis*, and Futures in *du*, is a Sign of a Dative, as *To be lamented OF all Men Flebilis, or, Flendus omnibus, Amandus nemini.*

## Concerning OF, after a Verb.

## SECOND RULE.

OF (signifying Concerning, From, BY) coming after a Verb, is made by an Abl. with *a, ab, de, e, or ex.*

1. OF, for Concerning, is made by *De*, as, *What said he of, (i. e. concerning) the King, Quid dixit de Rege. OF the Dog and the Hare, De cane & lepore.* 2. OF, for From, as, *All Things are OF (i. e. From) God, Omnia sunt a Deo. Beware OF him, Cave ab illo. He gave of his own. Dedit ex suo.* 3. OF for BY, as, *He is praised OF, (i. e. BY) all, Laudatur ab omnibus.* The Preposition is commonly omitted after Verbs of depriving, as, *Frustratur Spe, Me cura levatis. Privat omnibus voluptatibus.*

## Three Exceptions about OF after a Verb.

## First Exception.

OF, after the *English* of *Est, Pœnitet, Pudet, Piget, Miseret, Tadet* is a Sign of the Genitive.

As, *He is OF a good Wit, Est boni ingenii. This is the Master's Book Hic liber est præceptoris. It repenteth me OF my Sin, Pœnitet me peccati I am ashamed of my Brother, Pudet me Fratris.* See the Critical Syntax, Rule 4. Figure 2.

Second

## THE NEW METHOD.

### Second Exception.

OF between a Verb of valuing, and a Noun of uncertain Value, is a Sign of the Genitive.

As, *I Think, Judge, Value it. OF how much Worth, OF so much Worth. OF more, OF less, OF little, OF very little, OF no Worth at all; Aestim. Curo, Facio, tanti, majoris, pluris, minoris, parvi, minimi maximi, nihili, nauci, flocci, &c.* See the Critical syntax, Rule 4. Figure 3.

### Third Exception.

OF after Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, Absolving, and Admonishing, is a Sign of the Genitive.

As, *I Accuse, Condemn, Absolve thee OF Theft, Accuso. Condemno. Absolvo te furti, or, furto; for sometimes the Abl. is used instead of the Genitive. I put my Brother in mind OF his Duty, Monito, Admoneo, Com-moneo Fratrem officii.* See the Critical Syntax, Rule 4. Figure 4.

## Of the Signs TO and FOR.

### THIRD RULE.

TO and FOR, (signifying to the Use, Benefit, or Damage of any Person or Thing) are Signs of the Dative, after the Verbs, Adjectives, and Adverbs.

1. TO and FOR after Verbs, as, *Do Good TO all Men, Benefacito omnibus. Do harm to no Man, Malefacito nemini. He neither doth good TO himself, nor others, Nec sibi, nec aliis prodest. It is fit FOR us, Convenit nobis. That is very profitable FOR the Common-Wealth, Multum id reipublicæ conducit. Give me a Book [i. e. the Book to me] ea mihi librum.* For in such Expressions, *Give me a Book, Tell me a Story, Ietch me my Horse,* the Sign TO which is lost in the Transposition, recovers its Place in the natural Order of the Words, *Give the Book TO me, &c.* Likewise, *Money is TO me, Pecunia est mihi. Pens are TO us. Sunt nobis pennæ.* Here the Particle TO is lost, when *est* is englisht by *have*; as, *I have Money, We have Pens, &c.*

When TO and FOR come both together; they are made by a double Dative; which is usually govern'd by some one of these Verbs,

*Verto, Habeo. Tribuo, Puto, Sum, Do, Duco, Relinquo.*

As, *He gave his Book to me FOR a Pledge, Dedit mihi librum pignori. The Queen is TO us FOR a Safety, (or to us a Safety) Regina est nobis præsidio.* The Dative after FOR may also be varied by *pro*, with an Ablative, as, *Regina est nobis pro præsidio.* And TO is sometimes varied by *Ad*, as in the second Exception following.

2. TO and FOR after Adjectives; as, *Faithful TO all Men, Fidis omnibus. Troublesome TO his Friends, Mo estus amicis. Profitable FOR the Common-Wealth, Utilis Reipublicæ. Gracious, ingraus, Benignus, Amabilis omnibus. Similar to Patri, and sometimes patris.*

3. TO after Adverbs, as, *He liveth agreeably TO Nature, Vivit convenienter, vel congruenter naturæ. Canit similiter huic.*

### Exceptions



## Exceptions about TO

## First Exception.

TO, after the *English* of *Attinet, Pertinet, Spectat, Voco, Scribo, Invito, Loquor, Hortor*, is made by *Ad*.

As, *This Book belongeth to the Master*, *Hic liber Attinet, Pertinet, Spectat ad præceptorem. I called the Prætors TO me. Prætores ad me vocavi. He invited me TO Supper, Invitavit me ad cœnam.*

## Second Exception.

TO or FOR after Adjectives of *Readiness*, or *Fitness*; and after Verbs denoting *Motion*, or any Tendency to it, is made by *ad* or *in*.

As, *Ready TO write*, *Accinctus ad Scribendum. Fit FOR the War*, *Aptus ad arma, or armis*, according to the Rule. *TO come TO Hand*, *Accedere ad manum. He applied his Mind TO Philosophy*, *Mentem ad Philosophiam appulit. He came TO Geneva*, *Ad Genevam pervenit. But ad* is usually omitted before the Name of a *Town* or *first Supine*, or these particular Words, *Home, Country*, as, *He went TO London, Rome, Athens*, *Ivit Londinum, Romam, Athenas. I am going TO fish*, *Eo piscatum. I will go home*, *Ibo domum. TO the Country*, *Ibo rus.*

Here follows an Alphabetical List of such Adjectives and Verbs as belong to this Exception. These marked thus [\*] are read also with a Dative.

| ADJECTIVES.          |            | Præcept,     | Headlong.   | Cogo,      | I drive.   |
|----------------------|------------|--------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Accinctus,           | Ready.     | Proclivis, * | Forward.    | Comparo, * | I provide. |
| Accommodatus         | Fitted.    | Promptus,    | Ready.      | Conduco,   | I avail.   |
| Alacris,             | Brisk,     | Pronus,      | Inclined.   | Confero, * | I conduce. |
| Aptus, *             | Fit.       | Propensus,   | Addicted.   | Duco,      | I lead.    |
| Attentus,            | Bent.      | Tardus,      | Backward.   | Excito,    | I excite.  |
| Commodus*Convenient. |            | Vehemens,    | Earnest.    | Incito,    | I incite.  |
| Comparatus,          | Provided.  | Velox,       | Swift       | Inclino,   | I bend.    |
| Compositus,          | Disposed,  | Utilis       | Useful.     | Instigo,   | I Egg.     |
| Expeditus,           | Ready.     | VERBS.       |             | Intendo,   | I bend.    |
| Facilis,             | Easy.      | Accingo, *   | I prepare.  | Lacesso,   | I Provoke. |
| Factus,              | Made.      | Addo *       | I add.      | Paro,      | I prepare. |
| Festinus,            | Hastening. | Adhærerò, *  | I stick to. | Propero,   | I hasten.  |
| Inclinatus,          | Bent.      | Adigo,       | I drive.    | Provoco,   | I provoke. |
| Instructus,          | Furnished. | Adjicio, *   | I add.      | Tollo,     | I lift.    |
| Natus,               | Born.      | Affero, *    | I bring.    | Tendo,     | I bend.    |
| Ornatus,             | Decked.    | Appello, *   | I approach. | Venio,     | I come.    |
| Paratus, *           | Ready.     | Applico, *   | I apply.    | Urgeo,     | I force.   |
| Piger,               | Slow.      | Attendo, *   | I listen.   |            |            |

## Exceptions about FOR.

## First Exception.

FOR signifying the *Cause* or *Reason* of a Thing, is a Sign of the Abl. or it may be made by *ob, propter, de, præ pro*.

As, *Pale FOR Fear*, *Pallidus metu. Here Pale is the Effect, and Fear the Cause. I tremble FOR cold*, *Horreo frigore. I cannot speak FOR Weep-*  
ping,

ping, Præ lachrymis loqui non possum. *I am paid FOR my Folly*, Pretium ob Stultitiam fero. *He obeys the Laws FOR Fear*, Legibus propter metum paret. *Is that irsbe crys FOR*, Num id lachrymat Virgo [sup. ob.] *FOR a great Reason*, Gravi de causa. *FOR that Reason*, Illa causa, ea re.

*FOR*, before *Sake*, is made by *ergo*, gratia or causa with a Gen. as, *FOR Example's Sake*. Exempli gratia. *We are come FOR his Sake*, Illius ergo venimus. Here *ergo* is a Subst. from ἐργον opus.

### Second Exception.

*FOR*, before a Noun of Price, is a Sign of the Abl.

As, *I bought a Book FOR a Shilling*, Emi librum solido. *I sold an Horse for Six Pounds*, Vendidi equum Sex minis. *FOR as little as you can*, Quam minimo queas. See the Crit. Syntax, Rule 6. Fig. 7.

Except these Adjectives [*FOR so much, how much, more, less, &c.*] put alone without Substantives, which are latined by those Genitives, *Tanti, Quanti, Pluris, Minoris*; as, *I bought a Book FOR less*, Emi Librum minoris. See the Crit. Syntax, Rule 4. Fig. 3.

### Third Exception.

*FOR*, denoting Exchange, Reward, or in stead of, is made by *pro*.

1. *FOR*, denoting Exchange, as, *I gave an Apple FOR a Pear*, Dedi pomum pro pyro. *I got a Book FOR a Knife*, Accepi librum pro cultro.
2. *FOR*, denoting Reward, as *You shall have this FOR your Reward*, Hoc tibi pro præmio erit. *Let Thanks be given FOR their so great Merits to the Common wealth*, Pro tantis eorum in rempublicam meritis gratiæ referantur.
3. *FOR*, denoting in stead of, as, *He was brought to Thais FOR* (i. e. in stead of) *that Eunuch*, Is pro illo Eunucho ad Thaidem deductus est. *I will grind for you*, Ego pro te molam.

### Fourth Exception.

*FOR*, before a Noun of Time, is made by *ad, in, or per*.

As, *FOR a while*, Ad tempus. *FOR an Hour*, Ad Horam. *FOR the Present*, Ad præsens, *FOR the Time to come*, In posterum. *FOR ever* In Æternum. *FOR some Years*, Per aliquot annos. *FOR so many Ages* Per tot secula.

### Fifth Exception.

*FOR*, denoting the Use or End, is made by *ad* or *in*.

As, *All Things are created FOR the Use of Man*, Ad usum hominum omnia creantur. *FOR that End*, In eum finem. *FOR our Good*, In rem nostram. *He appointed Punishment FOR Offenders*, Constituit supplicium in improbos.

*Note.* *FOR*, denoting Distribution by equal Shares, is made by *in*, as, *He sets down twelve Acres FOR every Man*, Duodena describit in singulos hominès Jugera.

*Of the Signs, In With, From, By, At, On, Than.*

### FOURTH RULE.

*IN, WITH, FROM, BY, AT, ON, also THAN*, after a Comparative, are Signs of the Abl.

1. **IN.** As, *IN the Beginning*, In principio. *I came in Time*, In tempore veni. *IN Church*, In templo. *In Urbe*, In Foro. *In Scotia*, In Anglia. For the Preposition *in*, is usually exprest in *Latin*, unless when any Part or Property of a Thing is denoted, and then it is commonly understood, as, *Slow IN Hand*, Tardus manu. *Lentus gradu*. *Dulcis eloquio*. *Benignus natura*. *Fractus membris*.

2. **WITH.** As, *I write WITH a Pen*, Scribo calamo. *Endued WITH Virtue*, Præditus virtute. *Auctus honore*. *Uber distentum lacte*. *Contentus parvo*. *Beo tediis*. *Dono te equo*. *Afficio te honore*. *Prosequor te laude*. *Colo te munere modico*. *Sterno lectum tapete*. *Abundat, Impletur, Affluit vino*.

3. **FROM.** As, *FROM the Beginning*, A principio. *From that Time*, Ab illo tempore. *I will speak FROM my Heart*, Dicam ex animo. *FROM doing*, Ab agendo. In *Latin*, the Prepositions *a*, *ab*, are usually exprest, unless before the proper Name of a Town, as, *The King came FROM Rome*, *London*, *Athens*. *Paris*, Rex venit Roma, Londino, Athenis, Parisiis. Likewise *FROM home*, Domo. *FROM the Country*, Ruri.

4. **BY.** As, *He subdued him not BY Arms, but BY Death*, Non armis, sed morte subegit. *You are a Father to him BY Nature*, *I BY Counsel*, Natura tu illi pater es, consilius ego. *I have a Wolf BY the Ears*, Lupum auribus teneo. *Higher BY a Foot*, Altior pede. *More BY twice so much*, Duplo majus.

5. **AT.** As, *To play AT the Ball, Bowls, &c.* Ludere pila, globis. *AT one Blow*, Uno ictu. *AT first Sight*, Primo aspectu. *AT thy Command*, Tuo jussu. *He lives AT a large Rate*, Profusus sumptibus vivit. *AT three a Clock*, Hora tertia. *AT that Time*, Eo tempore.

6. **ON.** As, *ON that Condition*, Ea lege: Sub ea conditione. *To play ON a Fiddle*, Canere fidibus, *I saw the King ON Saturday*, Vidi Regem die Saturni. *To go ON Foot*, Ire pedibus. *He feedeth ON Herbs*, viveth *ON Milk*, Vescitur herbis, vivitur lacte.

7. **THAN.** after a Comparative, as, *Whiter THAN Snow*, Candidior nive. *Learneder THAN the Master*, Doctior Præceptore. The same may be made by *Quam*, as, *candidior nive*, or *quam nix est*; but the former is more elegant.

### Exceptions from the foregoing Rule.

#### First-Exception.

**AT** or **IN** before the Name of a Town (of the first or second Declension, and singular Number) is a Sign of the Genitive.

As, *I was AT, or IN Rome*, Eram Romæ. *The Queen is AT London*, Regina est Londini. *My Father is AT Edinburgh, Glasgow*, Pater meus est Edinburgi, Glasgux. But when the Name of a Town is of the third Declension, or plural Number, then it is put in the Abl. according to the general Rule; as, *I was AT, or in Athens, Paris, Carthage*, Eram Athenis, Parisiis, Carthagine. Likewise, for *AT Home*, we say, Domi. *AT the War*, Militiæ, belli. *IN the Country*, Rure, or, ruri.

#### Second Exception.

**WITH**, signifying *Together With*, is made by *cum*.

As, *I was walking WITH a friend*, Ambulabam cum amico. *Sedebam cum fratre*. *Lege cum illo*.

Third



## Third Exception.

**WITH** or **AT** after Verbs of Anger are Signs of the Dat.

As, *I am angry WITH, or at, Peter*, Indignor, I ascor, Succenseo, Stomachor Petro.

## Fourth Exception.

**WITH**, after Verbs of Comparing or Contending, is made by *cum*: Or, Poetically, by a Dat.

As, *To compare one Thing WITH another*, Comparare, conferre rem cum re. *To fight WITH the French*, Pugnare, certare, bellare cum Gal-  
lis: Or, Poetically, by a Dative; as, *To compare great Things WITH small*, Componere magna parvis. *None but Amyntas contends WITH you*, Solus tibi certat Amyntas.

## Fifth Exception.

**FROM**, after Verbs of differing, and taking away, is some-  
times made by a Dative.

As, *Hidden Virtue differs little FROM buried stoth*, Paulum sepultæ distat inertæ celata virtus. *He hath taken away my Book FROM me*, Eripuit, Surripuit mihi librum.

## Sixth Exception.

**BY**, after a passive Verb or Participle, is made by *a*, *ab*, or a Dative only.

As, *I am taught BY the Master*, Doceor a Præceptore. *Slain BY him*. Occisus ab illo. This is often made by a Dative; as, *He is seen BY none*. Nec cernitur ulli, for ab ullo. *I thought these Things had been heard BY you*, Hæc ego audita tibi putaram, for audita a te.

## Observations on the Fourth Rule.

Although these Particles, *In, With, From*, &c. are commonly Signs of the Abl. yet sometimes they are variously rendered, as will appear in these following Observations.

1. *Obj.* **IN**, referring to Place, is made by *in*, *apud* or *ad*; as, *IN the Marker*, In foro, or, Apud, ad forum.

2. *Obj.* **IN**, referring to Time, is made by *in*, *de*, *per*, *intra* and *inter*, as, *IN Time*, In tempore. *IN those days*, In his diebus, or, per eos dies. *To watch IN the Night*, de nocte vigilare. *IN fourteen Years Time*, Intra quatuordecim annos. *IN so many Years*, Inter tot annos. Also, *IN Arms*, Sub armis. *IN Order*, Ex ordine. *IN Word only*, Verbo tenus. *IN Jest*, Per jocum. *IN Latin, Greek, &c.* Latine, Græce.

3. *Obj.* **WITH** after *Begin* is rendred by *ab*; as, *I had a Mind to begin WITH that*, Ab eo exordiri volui.

4. *Obj.* **BY**, in Beseeching and Swearing, is made by *per*; as, *I beseech you BY the immortal Gods*, Oro vos per Deos immortales. *I swear BY Mercury*, Per Mercurium juro. Some other Phrases, *BY Night*, De nocte. *BY Agreement*, Ex compacto. *To get a Thing BY Heart*, Mandare aliquid memoriæ. *BY my self*, Per me, Solus.

5. *Obj.* **BY**, or **THROUGH**, between a Verb of Motion, and the Name of a Town, are Signs of the Ablative; or, they may be rendred by *per* with the Acc. as, *He went to Rome BY (or through) London*, Ivit Romam Londino, or, per Londinum.

6. *Obs.* AT, denoting Time, is sometimes made by *ad, in, sub, de, as*, AT the appointed Time, Ad promissum tempus. AT first, In principio. At Sun set, Sub occasum Solis. AT Supper, Inter coenam. AT Midnight, De media nocte.

7. *Obs.* AT before a Word of Place, and signifying In, is made by *in*; as AT School, In Schola. AT Church, In templo. AT, signifying near, or hard by a Place, is made by *ad, ante* or *pro*; as, AT the Door, Ad ostium, or, pro foribus. AT the Fire side, Ante focum.

8. *Obs.* AFTER, signifying according to, is a Sign of the Ablative, as, AFTER the French Fashion, More Gallorum. AFTER my Manner, Meo modo. The same may be made by *ad, in, or de, as*, AFTER this Fashion, ad, or In hunc modum. He calls him AFTER his own Name, Suo dicit de nomine. Some other Phrases, AFTER Dinner, a prandio. Presently AFTER the Funeral, Statim a funere. A few Days AFTER, Paucis post diebus.

9. *Obs.* ON, before Ground, is a Sign of the Gen. as, He sitteth ON the Ground, Sedet humi. Some other Phrases, To fight ON Horse-back, pugnare ex equo. It is ON the right Hand, Est a dextra. ON every Side, Ex omni parte. ON the contrary, e contra.

10. *Obs.* Sometimes the Sign lyes at the End of the Sentence, and its Case at the Beginning, which must be rectified, by setting the Words in their natural Order; as, The Man whom I told you OF, i. e. Of whom I told you.

Thus far, of finding the Case of a Substantive by English Signs set before it. Constructions extraordinary and unusual are left to the Learner's occasional Observation, and the Aid of a Dictionary.

## CH A P. III.

*Of finding the Case of the Substantive, by its Signification alone.*

### R U L E.

Miles, Yards, Feet, Inches; also Years, Months, Days, Hours, &c. are put in the Acc. or Abl.

1. A Mile, Yard, Foot, Inch, or any other Substantive, denoting the Measure of a Thing, or the Distance from one Place to another, is put in the Acc. and sometimes in the Abl. as, My Journey is Twenty Miles long, Iter meum est viginti milliarum, vel milliaribus longum. Cloath two Yards broad, Pannus duas ulnas latus. A Wall ten Foot high, Murus decem pedes, vel pedibus altus. A Table six Inches thick, Mensa sex digitos, vel digitis crassa. The Acc. is govern'd by *ad*, and the Abl. by *in* understood.

2. The Noun of Time answereth to the Question *When*, and hath usually IN, AT, or ON before it; as, IN the Beginning, AT three a Clock. ON Monday. This is made an Abl. according to its Sign. See Chap. 2. Rule 4.

3. Space or Continuance of Time answereth to the Question *How long?* and is express'd by Year, Month, Day, Hour, &c. in the Acc. and sometimes in the Abl. as, Peter dwelt at Edinburgh six Years, Petrus habitavit Edinburgi sex annos, vel annis. I have studied three Hours, Studui tres horas, vel tribus horis. The Acc. is govern'd by *ad, ante, per, &c.* which sometimes are express'd; as, Studui tres horas, or, per tres horas. The Abl. is govern'd by *in* understood.

## C H A P. IV.

*Of finding the Case of a Substantive, after Words Undeclinable.**Of the Case of a Substantive, after an Adverb.*

## FIRST RULE.

Adverbs of Time, Place and Quantity, require the Gen.

1. *Of Time*, as, *Pridie, Postridie illius diei. Tunc temporis. Interea loci.* 2. *Of Place*, as, *Longe, Nusquam, Minime gentium, Ubique terrarum. Ubi locorum.* 3. *Of Quantity*, as, *Abunde, affatim, Parum, Nimis, Satis vini.* We say also, *pridie, postridie Calendas.* See the Critical Syntax, Rule 4. Fig. 8.

## SECOND RULE.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives, have the Case of their Primitives.

As, *Petrus facit inutiliter sibi. Canit similiter huic. Venit mihi obviam.* For, *utilis, similis, obvius*, requires the Dat.

## THIRD RULE.

*En, Ecce*, have the Nom. or Acc. O, the Nom. Acc. or Voc.

The Case is govern'd by, or agrees with some suppress'd Verb; as, *en, ecce Rex.* [sup. *venit*] *en, ecce Regem* [sup. *video*] *O qualis facies* [sup. *est*] *O me miserum* [sup. *Sentio*] *O Socii* [sup. *auscultato*].

## FOURTH RULE.

*Ab, Oh, Proh, Heu, Hem*, have the Nom. Acc. or Voc.

The Case is still govern'd by, or agrees with some suppress'd Verb; as, *ab, oh, inconstantiam* [sup. *abominor*] *Proh fidem deorum* [sup. *vide*] *Vae tibi* [sup. *sit*] *Heu mihi* [sup. *quanta est miseria*] *ab* [what a Misery 'tis to] *me*.

*Of the Case of a Substantive after a Preposition.*

Prepositions are so called, because they stand before the Cases which they govern; but *Versus* and *Tenus* always follow them.

## FIRST RULE.

These Thirty Prepositions govern the Accusative.

*Ad, Penes, Adversus, Cis, Citra, Circiter, Extra, Erga, Apud, Ante, Secus, Trans, Supra, Versus, & Intra, Ultra, Post, Præter, Propter, Prope, Pone, Secundum, Per, Circum, Circa, Contra, Juxta, Inter, Ob, Infra.*

## SECOND RULE.

These Sixteen Prepositions govern the Ablative.

*Ex, E, De, Coram, Cum, Clam, Pro, Præ, Procul, ac Ab, Et Sine; Junge Palam, nec non Abs, A, Tenus, Absque.*

## THIRD



## THIRD RULE.

These Four Prepositions govern the Acc. or Abl.

*Sub, Super, In, Subter* Quartum, Sextumve requirunt.

## Observations on Prepositions.

## First Observation.

**IN** signifying *In*, governs the Abl. signifying *Into*; *Towards*, *Against*, *After*, *For*, *Till*, the Acc.

As, *IN* templo; *In* Churah. *Cecidit in ignem*, He fell *INTO* the Fire. *Amor in patriam*. Love *TOWARDS* his Country. *Pugnavit in Romanos*, He fought *AGAINST* the Romans. *In hunc modum*, *AFTER* this Manner. *In æternum*, *FOR* ever. *Scriptit in tempus cœnæ*, He wrote *TILL* Supper Time.

## Second Observation.

**SUPER** for *Concerning* hath an Abl. For *Above*, *Besides*, *Beyond*, an Acc. For *Upon* the Acc. or Abl.

As, *super hac re*, *CONCERNING* that Affair. *Super mille*, *ABOVE* a Thousand, *Super cætera ejus flagitia*, *BESIDES* his other Villanies. *Super Garamantas & Indos*, *BEYOND* the farthest Indies. *Super terræ tumulum*, *UPON* a Hillock. *Super viridi gramine*, *UPON* the Green Grass.

## Third Observation.

**SUB** signifying *Under*, *Upon*, governs the Ablative; but **SUB** *About*, the Accusative.

As, *Meruit sub Rege*, He served *UNDER* the King. *Sub conditione*, *UPON* Condition. *Sub idem tempus*, *ABOUT* that Time.

4. Obs. *A* and *E*, are set before Words beginning with Consonants. *Ab* and *ex*, commonly before Words beginning with Vowels. *Ab*, before Words beginning with *T* or *Q*. *Cum* is put after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*.

5. Obs. *Tenus* hath a Genitive plural, when the Noun wants the singular, or signifies Pairs; as, *Cumarum tenus*; *Crurum tenus*.

6. Obs. *Procul*, *Versus*, *Circiter*, *Prope* and *Usque*, seem rather to be Adverbs, for *Ad* or *ad* is always understood with *Procul*, and *ad* with the rest; as, *procul mari* (sup. *ad*.) *procul muros* (sup. *ad*.) &c. Also after *Palam* and *Clam*, is understood *ante* or *coram*.

7. Obs. Sometimes the Case which the Preposition governs is understood; as, *Ubi ad Dianæ veneris* (sup. *templum*) *Longo post tempore Venit*, i. e. *longo tempore post* (sup. *illud tempus de quo fit Sermo*) *Nec te quæsieris*, *extra* (sup. *te*) *Paucis post diebus factum*, i. e. *paucis diebus post* (sup. *diem constitutum*) *Quo tenditis ultra* (sup. *hunc locum*.)

## CHAP. V.

Of the Construction of Infinitives, Gerunds, Supines and Participles.

## Of the Infinitive Active.

## FIRST RULE.

A Verb following a Verb or Adjective is made by an Infinitive, whether **TO** comes between or not.

As,

As, *I desire to learn*, Cupio discere. *I can sing*, Possum cantare. *Desirous TO know*, Cupidus scire.

*First Exception.*

TO before a Verb, when it may be changed into OF, is made by the Gerund in *Di*.

As, *Time TO read*, or, *OF reading*, Tempus legendi: *Also*, Ad legendum. *Desirous TO learn*, or, *OF learning*, Cupidus discendi, or, Ad discendum: Or the same may be made by *ad*.

*Second Exception.*

TO after a Verb of Motion is made by the Supine in *um*; or the Accusative of a Gerund with *ad*.

As, *I am going TO fish*, Eo piscatum; or, Ad piscandum; but not piscari. *I am coming TO see*, Venio visum, or, ad videndum; but, more ornately, Videndi gratia.

*Third Exception.*

TO (or about to) after the Verb *am*, is made by the Participle in *rus*.

As, *I am TO tarry*, Ego mansurus sum. *He is TO return*, Ille rediturus est. *We are TO die to Morrow*, Cras morituri sumus.

S E C O N D R U L E.

MUST is made by the Participle in *Dum* or *Dus*, with *est*, and a Dative of the Person.

As, *I MUST read*, Legendum est mihi. *We MUST go*, Eundum est nobis. *All MUST die*, Moriendum est (sup. omnibus) Orandum est (sup. nobis) The same may be made by *Oportet*, and the Person in the Acc. as, Legendum est mihi, or, Oportet me legere.

*Of the Infinitive Passive.*

T H I R D R U L E.

TO BE, is made by the Infinitive Passive.

As, *He desires TO BE taught*, Cupit doceri. *Worthy TO BE loved*, Dignus amari. Contentus vapulare.

*First Exception.*

TO BE, after *Worthy*, *Unworthy*, *Easy*, *Hard*, *Base*, and some others, is made by the Supine in *U*.

As, *Worthy*, *Unworthy TO BE honoured*, Dignus, indignus honoratu. *Easy*, *hard TO BE understood*, Facilis, difficilis intellectu. *Base TO BE spoken*, Turpe dictu. *Also*, fas, nefas dictu. Opus scitu, &c. Such Sentences may be varied thus, Rex est dignus honoratu, honorari, honore, qui honoretur, quem honores.

*Second Exception.*

TO BE after the Verb *am*, or a Substantive, is made by the Participle in *Dus*.

As, *I am TO BE commended*, Ego sum laudandus. *The Gate is TO BE shut*, Janua est claudenda. *A Field TO BE tilled*, Ager colendus.

*Obs.*

## Observations on the Participle in ING.

The English Participle in ING is variously rendred in *Latin*, as, 1. ING after the Verb *Am*, is made by its own Verb; as, *I am WritING*, *Ego scribo*. 2. ING after a Verb of Motion is made by the Supine, as, *He went a HuntING*, *Abiit venatum*. *He is come from HuntING*, *Rediit venatu*. 3. ING after OF, is made by the Gerund in *Di*, as, *Desirous of learnING*, *Cupidus discendi*. 4. ING is made by the Gerund in *dum*, when the Word before it is rendred by *ad*, *inter* or *ante*; as, *Ready for WritING*, (or to write) *Accinctus ad Scribendum*. *Inter coenandum*. 5. ING after *In*, *With*, *From*, *BY*, is made by the Gerund in *do*: *I am weary with Reading*, *Sum defessus legendo*. The Participle in ING being thus directed by Signs, falls under the Rules of Government already delivered.

### Of the Ablative Absolute.

#### FIRST RULE.

BEING, between a Substantive and Adjective, or between two Substantives (the former neither agreeing with, nor being govern'd by the following Verb) is a Sign of the Abl. absolute.

As, *France BEING quiet*, *Cæsar goeth into Italy*. *Quieta Gallia, Cæsar in Italiam proficiscitur*. *Christ BEING our Guide*, *nothing is desperate*, *Christo auspice, nil desperandum*. When the Substantive before BEING, is either the Nom. to the following Verb, or govern'd by it, then BEING is a Sign that two Substantives agree in Case, but not of the Abl. absolute, as, *My Father BEING a Man*, *loveth me*, *BEING a Child*, *Pater meus vir, amat me puerum*. Here *Pater* is the Nom. to *amat*, and *me* the Acc. govern'd by it.

#### SECOND RULE.

HAVING, before an English Participle in D, T, N, is rendred by the Abl. of a Participle in *tus*.

As, *HAVING said* (or *spoken*) *that, he died*, *Hoc dicto, expiravit*. Therefore observe, that *Cum*, *Dum*, *Ubi*, *Postquam*, being left out, the Nom. before, or the Acc. after the Verb may be elegantly turned into an Ablative, and the Verb into a Participle agreeing therewith; as, *Cum hoc dixisset*, into *hoc dicto*. *Dum regnat Gulielmus*, into *regnante Gulielmo*.

*Of Gerunds, Supines and Participles, as they govern Cases after them.*

#### R U L E.

Gerunds, Supines and Participles, have, after them, the same Cases that their Verbs have.

As, *Repetens*, -endi, -endo, -endum, *repetitum*, *repetiturus lectionem*, because we say, *Repeto lectionem*.

#### Exception.

The Gerund in *dum* is better made an Adjective to agree with the Substantive, than govern it.

Thus, *Venio ad videndam Reginam*, is more elegant than *Videndum Reginam*. Yet such Sentences may be varied thus.

*Venio*



|       |               |         |               |
|-------|---------------|---------|---------------|
| Venio | Causa Videndæ | Reginæ  | bene          |
|       | Causa Videndi |         | rarissime     |
|       | Causa Videndi |         | bene          |
|       | Ad Videndum   | Reginam | minus ornate. |
|       | Ad Videndam   |         | ornate        |
|       | Ut Videam     |         | bene          |
|       | Visurus       |         | bene          |
|       | Visum         |         | vulgo         |
|       | Videre        |         | poetice.      |

Obs. 1. The Genitive of a Gerund may have another Genitive after it, as, *Venio causa videndi Reginæ*. Hence Terent. de *Fœmina*. *Cupidus sum videndi tui*, not *videndæ*.

Obs. 2. Participles and Adjectives of a passive Signification, have after them an Acc. of the Part affected; as, *Fractus membra labore*. *Æger pedes*. *Saucius frontem*. See the Critical Syntax, Rule 5. Fig. 6.

### Cautions to avoid Mistakes in making Latin.

#### First Caution.

*Him, Her, His, Their, Them*, when they admit *Self* after them, are made by *sui*; when *Own* by *suus*; and without *Self*, by *Is* or *Ille*.

As, *Peter said that he*, (i. e. himself) *did it*, *Petrus dixit se fecisse*, not *illum*. *Peter loves his Father*, (meaning his own Father) *Petrus amat patrem suum*, not *ejus*. *Peter said that he* (i. e. some other) *did it*. *Petrus dixit illum fecisse*, not *se*. *Peter loves John and his Brother*, (meaning John's Brother) *Petrus amat Joannem & fratrem ejus*, not *suum*. Note. *Hic* repeats what was last said, *Ille* what was first. *Ille* commends, *Iste* despises.

#### Second Caution.

*Am, Was, &c. Do, Did, &c. Have, Had, &c.* when they come before an *English* Verb, then they are only Signs, shewing in what Tense the following Verb is put, when rendred in *Latin*.

As, *I am reading, I was reading*; for which we say *Legô, legebam*, and not *sum*, or, *eram legens*.

#### Third Caution.

If *Am, Was, &c.* come not before *English* Verbs, then they are latinized by their own Verbs.

As, *I am, I was a Scholar*, *Sum, eram discipulus*. *I do, I did this Work*, *Ago, agebam hoc opus*.

F I N I S.

# A Critical Syntax,

Resolving many Difficulties in Grammar, both Ancient and Modern.

**W**ORDS are join'd in a Sentence, either by *Concord* or *Government*. *Concord* is the Agreement of two Words; as, *bona penna*. *Government* is the Dependence of one Word upon another; as, *frustum panis*. And, in the Order of Construction, the governing Word is always placed before that which is governed. The only Difficulty is to know which is the governing Word, because it is often suppress'd in *Latin*. And this frequently occasions a Mistake, in taking some other Word for it; which makes a false Government, as, *pœniter me peccati*. Here it is not the Verb *pœniter* which governs the Genitive *peccati*, but the suppress'd Word *Commissio*; and so the Construction runs thus, *Commissio peccati pœniter me*. Therefore, when a false Government occurs in the *New Method*, I refer to this *Syntax*, where the same Sentence is repeated, and a clear Discovery of the true Government made.

## FIRST RULE.

Every Sentence consists of a Nominative Case, and a Verb.

The Reason of the Rule is this. In every Sentence there is something said, but nothing can be said without a Verb (or predicate) and there can be no predicate without a Nominative Case of the Subject.

As, *Sat cito, si sat bene*, i. e. negotium est factum sat cito, si sit factum sat bene.

## SECOND RULE.

Every Adjective must have a Substantive, either express'd or understood.

The Reason of the Rule is this. A Substantive signifies the Thing it self, an Adjective the Nature or Manner of the Thing; so that an Adjective being only an Accident, must always have a Substantive for its Subject.

As, *Triste lupus Stabulis*, sup. *animal*. *Paucis te volo*, sup. *verbis*. *Natalis*, sup. *dies*. *Confluens, Torrens*, sup. *amnis*. *Laurea, Civica*, sup. *corona*. *Stativa, Hiberna*, sup. *castra*. Sometimes an Infinitive or whole Phrase supplies the Place of a Substantive, and then the Adjective must be neuter; as, *pulchrum est scire*, Knowledge is excellent. Here *scire* is the Nominative to *est*, and the Neuter Substantive to *pulchrum*. *Seni verba dare est difficile*, It is hard to cheat an Old Man. Here *dare verba seni* is the Nominative to *est*, and the neuter Substantive to *difficile*.

When the Substantive is either suppress'd, or cannot easily be known, ask the Question *What* with the Adjective, and the Answer is its Substantive; as, *a hard What*? Ans. *Stone*.

## THIRD RULE.

Every Finite Verb must have a Nominative Case either express'd or understood.

The Reason of the Rule is. A Verb signifies either the Action, or Motion of its Nominative, the Agent or Thing moving; as, *Præceptor docet*,  
equus

## A Critical Syntax.

*equus currit*; or the Passion of its Nominative the Patient; as, *ego Amor*; or the Existence or Being of its Nominative the Thing existing; as, *ego sum*: And since there can be no Action without an Agent, nor Passion without a Patient, nor Existence without something existing, then 'tis inconsistent with the Notion of a Verb to want a Nominative.

As, *Si vales*, sup. *tu*. *Valeo*, sup. *ego*. *Aiunt*, sup. *homines*. Several Things may stand for the Nominative to a Verb. 1. A Word taken for itself, as, *amo est Verbum*; *cras est Adverbium*. 2. An Infinitive Verb, as, *nasci*, *agrotare est*, *vivere*, *sæpe mori*. Here the Infinitives *Nasci* and *Vivere* are invariable Nouns, and may be Englished as such, as, *Our Birth is a Disease*, and *Life but a continual Dying*. 3. A Clause, or Member of the Sentence, as, *Quod studes est conducibile*. Here *quod studes* is the Nominative to *est*, and the Substantive to *conducibile*. *Benefacere omnibus est laude dignum*. *Benefacere omnibus* is the Nom. to *est*, and the Subst. to *dignum*.

Impersonal Verbs are known by the Sign IT; as, *It becometh*. And they are called *Impersonal*, because they receive not the personal Substantives, *Ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, for their Nominatives.

Some Impersonal Verbs have the Nom. always suppressed, because it is included in the Signification and Figure of the Verb, so *Ningit* includes *nix*. *Pluit* includes *Pluvia*. Also *Lucescit*, sup. *Lux*. *Diescit*, sup. *Dies*. *Noctescit*, sup. *nox*. *Vesperascit*, sup. *vesper*. *Grandinat*, sup. *grando*. *Tonitruat*, sup. *tonitru*. *Gelat*, sup. *gelu*. *Pœnitet*, sup. *pœnitentia*. *Piget*, sup. *pigritia*. *Pudet*, sup. *pudor*. *Miseret*, sup. *miseria*. *Tædet*, sup. *tædium*. *Curtitur*, sup. *Cursus*. *Bibitur*, sup. *vinum*. *Fertur*, sup. *fama*. *Pugnatur*, sup. *pugna*. *Studetur*, sup. *studium*. *Vivitur*, sup. *vita*. *Itur*, sup. *iter*. In all these, the Noun which is included in the Verb, is its Nominative.

All other Impersonal Verbs, as, *Juvat*, *Delectat*, *Decet*, *Oporter*, *Luber*, *Licet*, *Contingit*, *Præstat*, &c. have usually the following Infinitive, or whole Phrase for their Nominative; as, *Delectat me studere*. Here *studere* is the Nominative to *delectat*, and so the Construction runs thus, *Studere delectat me*. *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum*. Here *adire Corinthum* is the Nominative to *contingit*, and so the Construction runs thus, *Adire Corinthum non contingit cuivis homini*.

When the Nominative Case is either suppressed, or cannot easily be known, ask the Question *Who?* or *What?* with the Verb, and the Answer is its Nominative; as, *Who teacheth?* Ans. *The Master*.

## FOURTH RULE.

Every Genitive Case is govern'd by a Substantive, either express'd or understood.

The Reason of the Rule is, That the Genitive of a Substantive always explains or limits, and determines the general and indefinite Signification of that Substantive by which 'tis govern'd; as, *Uncia auri*. Thus the Genitive *auri* explains the general Signification of *uncia*, and determines it to be Gold, and not of Silver or Copper, &c. The most usual Mistakes and Difficulties in the Government of the Genitive Case, together with a clear Solution of each of them, are these following.

1. The Genitive Case is never govern'd by a Verb, but by a Noun; if not express'd yet understood. Thus *satagororum*, is, *ago sat rerum*; so that *sat* will be a Noun undeclin'd, according to that of Plautus, *Agitas sat tuarum rerum*. *Misereor tui*, sup. *Gratia*. *Miserescite regis*, sup. *Gratia*. *Interest præceptoris*, i. e. *est inter sup. negotia præceptoris*. *Refert præceptoris*, i. e. *res fert*, sup. *ad res*, or, *negotia præceptoris*. *Interest tua*, i. e. *est inter*



est-inter tua, sup. *negotia*. Refert tua, i. e. res fert ad tua, sup. *negotia*. Obliviscor, Reminiscor historiarum, sup. *verba*.

2. The Genitive after *est* is likewise govern'd by a Substantive understood, as, *Liber est praeceptoris*, for, hic liber est liber praeceptoris. Pocus est Moelibeï, sup. *pocus*. Regis est tueri leges, sup. *officium*, or, *munus*. The understood Substantive which governs the Genitive after *Poeniter*, *Pudet*, *Piger*, *Miseret*, *Tædet*, is also the Nominative to the Verb; as, *Poenitet me peccati*, sup. *commissio*, i. e. commissio peccati poenitet me. *Tædet me vitæ*, sup. *tadium*.

3. The Genitive after Verbs of Valuing is govern'd by *esse rem pretii* understood; as, *Æstimo, Curo, Facio te magni, parvi*, &c. i. e. æstimo te esse rem magni, or, parvi pretii. I take it kindly (or in good part) *æqui, bonique facio*, or, *consulo*, i. e. *Facio, consulo in partem æqui ac boni hominis*: For so the Sentence must be supplied. The Gen. after Verbs of Buying or Selling is govern'd by *pro re* understood; as, *Emi, vendidi equum magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, &c. i. e. *pro re magni pretii, &c.*

4. The Genitive after Verbs of Accusing, Condemning and Absolving, is govern'd by *de Crimine* understood, as, *Accuso, Condemno, Absolvo te furti*, i. e. *de crimine furti*. The Genitive after Verbs of Admonishing is govern'd by *Ratione* understood; as, *moneo fratrem officii*, i. e. *ratione officii*. Or, we may say, *de Officio*.

5. When after a Verb the Name of a Town is used in the Genitive, 'tis govern'd by *in urbe* understood; as, *eram Romæ, Edinburgi*, i. e. *in urbe Romæ*. Likewise *est domi*, sup. *in adibus*. *Est militiæ, belli*, sup. *in loco*. *Jacet humi*, sup. *in superficie*.

6. The Genitive after an Adjective is govern'd by a Substantive understood; as, *peritus belli*, sup. *in arte*. *Reus furti*, sup. *de crimine*. *Purus sceleris*, sup. *a Labe*, or, *Crimine*. *Unus fratrum*, sup. *ex numero*. Or rather the Genitive is put for the Ablative with a Preposition; as, *peritus belli*, for *ex*, or, *in bello*. *Unus fratrum*, for *ex fratribus*; and so the Genitive is govern'd by *ex* understood. For, in this the *Latins* imitate the *Greeks*, who make OF after all Adjectives by a Preposition with a Genitive Case. Hence *Vitruvius* puts a Genitive Case after the *Latin* Preposition *ex*; as, *descriptio ex duodecim signorum*.

7. *Dignus, Indignus*, and Adjectives of Plenty or Want, have sometimes a Genitive after them, in Imitation of the *Greeks*; as, *Dignus laudis*, sup. *ex*. *Plenus vini*, sup. *ex*. *Impers fraudis*, sup. *ex*. And so the Genitive is govern'd by the Greek Preposition *ex* understood.

8. When Adverbs have a Genitive after them, they are either taken for, and used as Nouns, or else a Noun is understood which governs the Genitive after them; as, *Pridie, postridie illius diei*; sup. *ante*, or, *post adventum*. *Tunc temporis*. *Interea loci*. *Nusquam, minime gentium*. *Ubique terrarum*. *Ubi locorum*. These Genitives, *temporis, loci, gentium, terrarum* and *locorum* are redundant: For, *tunc temporis* signifies no more than *tunc*. *Abunde, Assatim, Partim, Nymis, Satis, Parum Vini*, sup. *ex re*, or, *liquo*. We say also, *Pridie, postridie Calendas*: Sup. *ante* and *post*.

## FIFTH RULE.

The Accusative Case is always govern'd by an active Verb, Participle or Preposition: And an active Verb hath always an Accusative express or understood.

An active Verb is that which denotes the Action of its Nominative the Agent; as, *Præceptor docet*. And in respect of its Object or Accusative Case, is distinguished into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*. An

4  
An  
somet  
An  
wholl  
the Ef  
Yet al  
includ  
dam.

1.  
Or th  
ubi fi

2.  
tering  
ons  
ter th  
the v  
Ancil  
favor  
tiam,  
for, n

3.  
part  
thern  
Petrus

4.  
vern  
ceptor

5.  
the Si  
Moric

6. T  
active  
cam,  
senten  
pedes,

Th  
prest

Th  
on, is  
the p  
Sense;

1. l  
Ablati  
sup. c  
Salust  
the Pr  
the A  
sent T  
regnar  
Deo ju  
Tense

An *active Transitive Verb* is that, which passeth its Signification upon something that is the Effect or Object of its Action; as, *lego Grammaticam*.

An *active Intransitive Verb* is that, which reflects its Signification wholly upon the Nominative, without any Relation to an Accusative of the Effect, or Object of Action; as, *Arbor crescit. Petrus vivit, currit, &c.* Yet all *Intransitive Verbs* may have an Accusative of the Noun which is included in the Signification of the Verb; as, *Petrus vivit vitam jucundam. Currit cursum. It Iter.*

1. Sometimes a Word put for itself, as, *flecte penna: conjuga amo*; Or the whole Phrase after the Verb is put for the Accusative; as, *Scin, ubi sit frater meus? Nosti, quata sit bora.*

2. Verbs signifying *Profit, Damage, Trust, Distrust, Favouring, Flattering, Commanding, Obeying, Serving, Resisting, Helping*, denote Actions Transitive: And the Reason why they have a Dative immediately after them, and not the Accusative, is, because an Accusative is involv'd in the very Figure of the Verb, or else imply'd in its Signification. Thus, *Ancillor* involves *ancillam*; *Auxilior, auxilium*; *Fido, fidem*; *Faveo, favorem*; *Blandior, blandimentum*; *Impero, imperium*; *Obedio, obedientiam, &c.* Hence it is, that we say *Ledere neminem*, but *nocere nemini*; for, *nocere* includes *noxam*, an Accusative of its own Signification.

3. Verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, &c.* for the most part denote Actions *Intransitive*, and therefore have no Accusative after them; or else they involve an Accusative of their own Signification; as, *Petrus adstat mihi.*

4. When an active Verb hath two Accusatives after it, the latter is govern'd by a suppress'd Verb, as, *Doce me lectionem, sup. Scire. Roga præceptorem veniam, sup. dare.*

5. An active Participle governs the Accusative, because it retains Part of the Signification of the Verb from whence it comes, and implies Person, Motion and Time, all at once; as, *Audi vi Petrum legentem lectionem.*

6. The Accusative after passive Verb or Participle, is govern'd by an active Verb, or Preposition understood; as, *Discipuli docentur Grammaticam, sup. Scire. Præceptor rogatur a me veniam, sup. dare. Rogantur sententiam, sup. ferre. Fractus membra, sup. secundum, or, quoad. Ager pedes, sup. secundum, or, quoad. Saucius frontem, sup. secundum, or, quoad.*

### SIXTH RULE.

The Ablative Case is always govern'd by a Preposition express'd or understood.

The Reason why the Ablative must always be govern'd by a Preposition, is, to denote the Relation and Connection between the Ablative and the preceding Word, otherwise the Words can have no determinate Sense; as, *I write with a Pen*: And without the Preposition, *I write a Pen*.

1. In *Latin*, the Preposition is frequently suppress'd, especially before the Ablative of the Instrument, and the Ablative absolute; as, *Scribo calamo, sup. cum. Yet Cicero saith, Desinant obsidere cum gladiis curiam. Also Salust, Uti grege facto cum telis ad sese erumperent.* In which Examples the Preposition is express'd before the Ablative of the Instrument. When the Ablative absolute is made by an Adjective, or a Participle of the present Tense, 'tis govern'd by *sub*, and sometimes by *cum* understood; as, *regnante Gulielmo, sup. sub. Christo auspice nil desperandum, sup. sub. Deo juvante, sub. cum.* When 'tis made by a Participle of the preterit Tense, 'tis govern'd by *a* or *ab* understood, (signifying after, as, we say *a prandio*)

## A Critical Syntax.

*prandia*) as, *Quieta Gallia Cæsar in Italiam proficiscitur*, sup. *a* or *ab*. *Hoc dicto expiravit*, sup. *a* or *ab*.

2. The Ablative after *Opus*, *Usus*, *Lætus*, *Superbus*, *Natus*, *Satus*, *Cretus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*, is govern'd by *de* or *ex* understood; and sometimes the Preposition is express'd after *Natus*, *Satus*, &c. as, *Ex me hic non est Natus, sed ex Fratre*.

3. The Preposition which governs the Ablative after *Utor*, *Abutor*, *Fruor*, *Fungor*, *Vescor*, *Careo*, *Egeo*, *Indigeo*, *Sro*, *Consto*, *Valeo*, is supprest both in *English* and *Latin*, as, *We may use Riches*, *Licet uti Divitiis*. *I eat Herbs*, *Vescor herbis*. *I want Money*, *Careo, egeo, indigeo pecunia*. Yet these Verbs may be rendred in *English*, so as to include the Preposition; as, *Utor, I make Use OF*. *Vescor, I feed UPON*. *Careo, Egeo, Indigeo, I stand in need OF*. And so the Ablative must be Governed by *de* or *ex* understood.

4. The Ablative after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, and Adjectives of Plenty or Want, is govern'd by *a*, *ab*, or *ex* understood, as, *Dignus, indignus laude*, sup. *ex*. *Plenus Vino*, sup. *ex*. And sometimes the Preposition is express'd after Adjectives of Plenty or Want; as, *A suspicione vacuus*.

5. The Ablative after a Comparative is govern'd by *præ* understood; as, *Candidior Nive*, sup. *præ*.

6. The Ablative after an Adjective of Praise or Dispraise, is govern'd by *ex* understood; as, *Puer bonus ingenio*, sup. *ex*.

7. The Ablative of the Noun of Price is govern'd by *pro* understood; as, *emi, vendidi Equum sex minis*, sup. *pro*.

————— *Si quid novisti rectius istis*  
*Candidus imperti: Si non, his utere mecum.* Horat.

# F I N I S.





or,  
p-  
ri-  
eo  
ne  
o,  
o-  
or  
le,  
eft  
as,  
by  
d;